

## Table of Contents

<b>Introduction</b>	<b>4</b>
<b>Instrument Cluster</b>	<b>10</b>
Warning and control lights	10
Gauges	15
<b>Entertainment Systems</b>	<b>17</b>
AM/FM stereo with in-dash six CD	17
AM/FM stereo with CD/MP3	26
AM/FM stereo cassette with CD	31
<b>Climate Controls</b>	<b>38</b>
Heater only	38
Manual heating and air conditioning	39
Rear window defroster	40
<b>Lights</b>	<b>41</b>
Headlamps	41
Turn signal control	46
Bulb replacement	47
<b>Driver Controls</b>	<b>52</b>
Windshield wiper/washer control	52
Steering wheel adjustment	53
Power windows	55
Mirrors	57
Speed control	58
Message center	62
<b>Locks and Security</b>	<b>75</b>
Keys	75
Locks	75
Anti-theft system	84

## Table of Contents

<b>Seating and Safety Restraints</b>	<b>89</b>
Seating	89
Safety restraints	97
Airbags	112
Child restraints	127
<b>Tires, Wheels and Loading</b>	<b>139</b>
Tire Information	141
Tire Inflation	143
Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)	156
Vehicle loading	162
Trailer towing	169
Recreational towing	174
<b>Driving</b>	<b>175</b>
Starting	175
Brakes	178
Transmission operation	182
<b>Roadside Emergencies</b>	<b>200</b>
Getting roadside assistance	200
Hazard flasher switch	201
Fuel pump shut-off switch	202
Fuses and relays	202
Changing tires	209
Lug Nut Torque	220
Jump starting	220
Wrecker towing	226
<b>Customer Assistance</b>	<b>228</b>
Reporting safety defects (U.S. only)	234
<b>Cleaning</b>	<b>235</b>

## Table of Contents

<b>Maintenance and Specifications</b>	<b>242</b>
Engine compartment	244
Engine oil	247
Battery	251
Engine Coolant	253
Fuel information	259
Air filter(s)	273
Part numbers	275
Refill capacities	276
Lubricant specifications	278
<b>Accessories</b>	<b>285</b>
<b>Index</b>	<b>287</b>

All rights reserved. Reproduction by any means, electronic or mechanical including photocopying, recording or by any information storage and retrieval system or translation in whole or part is not permitted without written authorization from Ford Motor Company. Ford may change the contents without notice and without incurring obligation.

Copyright © 2005 Ford Motor Company

## Introduction

### CALIFORNIA Proposition 65 Warning



**WARNING:** Engine exhaust, some of its constituents, and certain vehicle components contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. In addition, certain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm.

### CONGRATULATIONS

Congratulations on acquiring your new Ford. Please take the time to get well acquainted with your vehicle by reading this handbook. The more you know and understand about your vehicle, the greater the safety and pleasure you will derive from driving it.

For more information on Ford Motor Company and its products visit the following website:

- In the United States: [www.ford.com](http://www.ford.com)
- In Canada: [www.ford.ca](http://www.ford.ca)
- In Australia: [www.ford.com.au](http://www.ford.com.au)
- In Mexico: [www.ford.com.mx](http://www.ford.com.mx)

Additional owner information is given in separate publications.

This *Owner's Guide* describes every option and model variant available and therefore some of the items covered may not apply to your particular vehicle. Furthermore, due to printing cycles it may describe options before they are generally available.

Remember to pass on this *Owner's Guide* when reselling the vehicle. It is an integral part of the vehicle.



**Fuel pump shut-off switch:** In the event of an accident the safety switch will automatically cut off the fuel supply to the engine. The switch can also be activated through sudden vibration (e.g. collision when parking). To reset the switch, refer to the *Fuel pump shut-off switch* in the *Roadside Emergencies* chapter.

### SAFETY AND ENVIRONMENT PROTECTION



#### Warning symbols in this guide

How can you reduce the risk of personal injury to yourself or others? In this guide, answers to such questions are contained in comments highlighted by the warning triangle symbol. These comments should be read and observed.

## Introduction



### Warning symbols on your vehicle

When you see this symbol, it is imperative that you consult the relevant section of this guide before touching or attempting adjustment of any kind.



### Protecting the environment

We must all play our part in protecting the environment. Correct vehicle usage and the authorized disposal of waste, cleaning and lubrication materials are significant steps towards this aim. Information in this respect is highlighted in this guide with the tree symbol.



### BREAKING-IN YOUR VEHICLE

Your vehicle does not need an extensive break-in. Try not to drive continuously at the same speed for the first 1,000 miles (1,600 km) of new vehicle operation. Vary your speed frequently in order to give the moving parts a chance to break in.

Drive your new vehicle at least 500 miles (800 km) before towing a trailer. For more detailed information about towing a trailer, refer to *Trailer towing* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter.

Do not add friction modifier compounds or special break-in oils during the first few thousand miles (kilometers) of operation, since these additives may prevent piston ring seating. See *Engine oil* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter for more information on oil usage.

### SPECIAL NOTICES

#### New Vehicle Limited Warranty

For a detailed description of what is covered and what is not covered by your vehicle's New Vehicle Limited Warranty, refer to the *Warranty Guide* that is provided to you along with your *Owner's Guide*.

#### Special instructions

For your added safety, your vehicle is fitted with sophisticated electronic controls.



Please read the section *Supplemental restraint system (SRS)* in the *Seating and Safety Restraints* chapter. Failure to follow the specific warnings and instructions could result in personal injury.

## Introduction



Front seat mounted rear-facing child or infant seats should **NEVER** be placed in front of an active passenger airbag.

### Service Data Recording

Service data recorders in your vehicle are capable of collecting and storing diagnostic information about your vehicle. This potentially includes information about the performance or status of various systems and modules in the vehicle, such as engine, throttle, steering or brake systems. In order to properly diagnose and service your vehicle, Ford Motor Company, Ford of Canada, and service and repair facilities may access vehicle diagnostic information through a direct connection to your vehicle when diagnosing or servicing your vehicle.

### Event Data Recording

Other modules in your vehicle — event data recorders — are capable of collecting and storing data during a crash or near crash event. The recorded information may assist in the investigation of such an event. The modules may record information about both the vehicle and the occupants, potentially including information such as:

- how various systems in your vehicle were operating;
- whether or not the driver and passenger seatbelts were buckled;
- how far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or the brake pedal;
- how fast the vehicle was traveling; and
- where the driver was positioning the steering wheel.

To access this information, special equipment must be directly connected to the recording modules. Ford Motor Company and Ford of Canada do not access event data recorder information without obtaining consent, unless pursuant to court order or where required by law enforcement, other government authorities or other third parties acting with lawful authority. Other parties may seek to access the information independently of Ford Motor Company and Ford of Canada.

### Notice to owners of pickup trucks and utility type vehicles



Utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles.

Before you drive your vehicle, please read this *Owner's Guide* carefully. Your vehicle is not a passenger car. As with other vehicles of this type,

## Introduction

failure to operate this vehicle correctly may result in loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury or death.

Be sure to read *Driving off road* in the *Driving* chapter.

### Using your vehicle with a snowplow

#### **Do not use this vehicle for snowplowing.**

Your vehicle is not equipped with a snowplowing package.

### Using your vehicle as an ambulance

#### **Do not use this vehicle as an ambulance.**

Your vehicle is not equipped with the Ford Ambulance Preparation Package.

### Cell phone use

The use of Mobile Communications Equipment has become increasingly important in the conduct of business and personal affairs. However, drivers must not compromise their own or others' safety when using such equipment. Mobile Communications can enhance personal safety and security when appropriately used, particularly in emergency situations. Safety must be paramount when using mobile communications equipment to avoid negating these benefits.

Mobile Communication Equipment includes, but is not limited to cellular phones, pagers, portable email devices, in-vehicle communications systems, telematics devices and portable two-way radios.



A driver's first responsibility is the safe operation of the vehicle. The most important thing you can do to prevent a crash is to avoid distractions and pay attention to the road. Wait until it is safe to operate Mobile Communications Equipment.







### Middle East/North Africa vehicle specific information

For your particular global region, your vehicle may be equipped with features and options that are different from the ones that are described in this *Owner's Guide*; therefore, a supplement has been supplied that complements this book. By referring to the pages in the provided supplement, you can properly identify those features, recommendations and specifications that are unique to your vehicle. **Refer to this Owner's Guide for all other required information and warnings.**

## Introduction

These are some of the symbols you may see on your vehicle.























### Vehicle Symbol Glossary

Safety Alert		See Owner's Guide	
Fasten Safety Belt		Airbag - Front	
Airbag - Side		Child Seat	
Child Seat Installation Warning		Child Seat Lower Anchor	
Child Seat Tether Anchor		Brake System	
Anti-Lock Brake System		Brake Fluid - Non-Petroleum Based	
Powertrain Malfunction		Speed Control	
Master Lighting Switch		Hazard Warning Flasher	
Fog Lamps-Front		Fuse Compartment	
Fuel Pump Reset		Windshield Wash/Wipe	
Windshield Defrost/Demist		Rear Window Defrost/Demist	



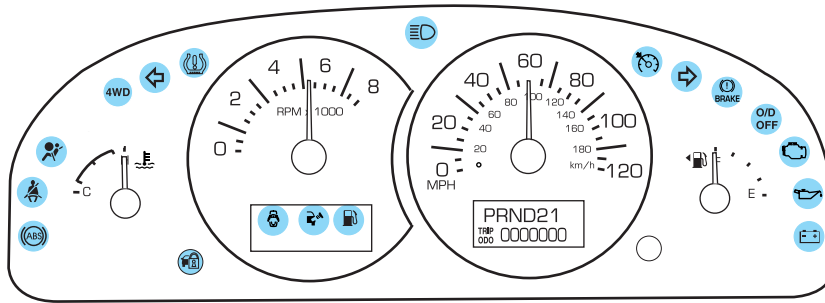
## Introduction

### Vehicle Symbol Glossary

Power Windows Front/Rear		Power Window Lockout	
Child Safety Door Lock/Unlock		Interior Luggage Compartment Release Symbol	
Panic Alarm		Engine Oil	
Engine Coolant		Engine Coolant Temperature	
Do Not Open When Hot		Battery	
Avoid Smoking, Flames, or Sparks		Battery Acid	
Explosive Gas		Fan Warning	
Power Steering Fluid		Maintain Correct Fluid Level	
Emission System		Engine Air Filter	
Passenger Compartment Air Filter		Jack	
Check Fuel Cap		Low Tire Pressure Warning	

## Instrument Cluster


### WARNING LIGHTS AND CHIMES



Warning lights and gauges can alert you to a vehicle condition that may become serious enough to cause expensive repairs. A warning light may illuminate when a problem exists with one of your vehicle's functions. Many lights will illuminate when you start your vehicle to make sure the bulb works. If any light remains on after starting the vehicle, refer to the respective system warning light for additional information.

**Service engine soon:** The *Service engine soon* indicator light illuminates when the ignition is first turned to the ON position to check the bulb. Solid illumination after the engine is started indicates the On Board Diagnostics System (OBD-II) has detected a malfunction. Refer to *On board diagnostics (OBD-II)* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter. If the light is blinking, engine misfire is occurring which could damage your catalytic converter. Drive in a moderate fashion (avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration) and have your vehicle serviced immediately by your authorized dealer.



 Under engine misfire conditions, excessive exhaust temperatures could damage the catalytic converter, the fuel system, interior floor coverings or other vehicle components, possibly causing a fire.

## Instrument Cluster

**Check fuel cap:** Illuminates when the fuel cap may not be properly installed. Continued driving with this light on may cause the Service engine soon warning light to come on. Refer to *Fuel filler cap* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter.

Without message center



With message center

CHECK  
FUEL CAP

**Brake system warning light:** To confirm the brake system warning light is functional, it will momentarily illuminate when the ignition is turned to the ON position

when the engine is not running, or in a position between ON and START, or by applying the parking brake when the ignition is turned to the ON position. If the brake system warning light does not illuminate at this time, seek service immediately from your authorized dealer. Illumination after releasing the parking brake indicates low brake fluid level and the brake system should be inspected immediately by your authorized dealer.



Driving a vehicle with the brake system warning light on is dangerous. A significant decrease in braking performance may occur. It will take you longer to stop the vehicle. Have the vehicle checked by your authorized dealer.

**Anti-lock brake system:**

Illuminates indicating an ABS fault.

If the lamp stays on for more than a few seconds, then an ABS fault is indicated, have the system serviced

immediately by your authorized dealer. Normal braking is still functional unless the brake warning light also is illuminated.



## Instrument Cluster

**Airbag readiness:** If this light fails to illuminate when ignition is turned to ON, continues to flash or remains on, have the system serviced immediately by your authorized dealer. A chime will also sound when a malfunction in the supplemental restraint system has been detected.



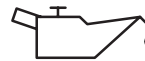
**Safety belt:** Reminds you to fasten your safety belt. A chime will also sound to remind you to fasten your safety belt.



**Charging system:** Illuminates when the battery is not charging properly.



**Engine oil pressure:** Illuminates when the oil pressure falls below the normal range, refer to *Engine oil* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter.



**Low fuel:** Illuminates when the fuel level in the fuel tank is at or near empty (refer to *Fuel gauge* in this chapter).

Without message center



With message center

LOW FUEL

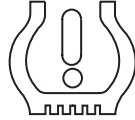
**Overdrive off:** Illuminates when the overdrive function of the transmission has been turned off, refer to the *Driving* chapter. If the light flashes steadily or does not illuminate, have the transmission serviced soon, or damage may occur.

O/D  
OFF

## Instrument Cluster

### Low tire pressure warning:

Illuminates when your tire pressure is low. If the light remains ON at start up or while driving, the tire pressure should be checked. Refer to *Inflating Your Tires* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter. When the ignition is first turned to ON, the light will illuminate for 3 seconds to ensure the bulb is working. If the light does not turn ON, have the system inspected by your authorized dealer. For more information on this system, refer to *Understanding Your Tire Pressure Monitoring System* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter.



**Four wheel drive indicator (if equipped):** Illuminates when ignition is first turned ON to check bulb. Blinking indicator indicates system has been disabled. If the light remains on have the system serviced.

Without message center

4WD

With message center

Displays when four-wheel drive system requires service.

SERVICE 4WD

**Anti-theft system:** Flashes when the Securilock<sup>™</sup> Passive Anti-theft System has been activated.



### Speed control (if equipped):

Illuminates when the speed control is activated. Turns off when the speed control system is deactivated.



## Instrument Cluster

**Door ajar:** Illuminates when the ignition is in the ON position and any door is open.

Without message center



With message center

Displays which door, liftgate or liftgate glass is open.



**Turn signal:** Illuminates when the left or right turn signal or the hazard lights are turned on. If the indicators stay on or flash faster, check for a burned out bulb.



**High beams:** Illuminates when the high beam headlamps are turned on.



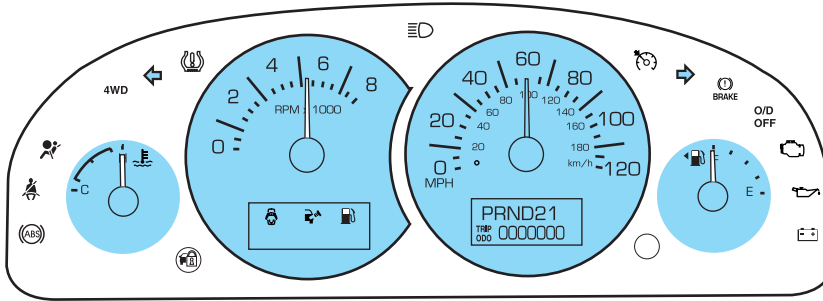
**Key-in-ignition warning chime:** Sounds when the key is left in the ignition in the OFF/LOCK or ACCESSORY position and the driver's door is opened.

**Headlamps on warning chime:** Sounds when the headlamps or parking lamps are on, the ignition is off (the key is not in the ignition) and the driver's door is opened.

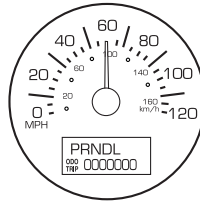
**Turn signal warning chime:** Sounds when the turn signal lever has been activated to signal a turn and not turned off after the vehicle is driven more than 2 miles (3.3 km).

## Instrument Cluster

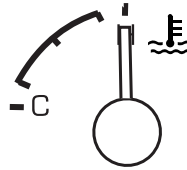
### GAUGES



**Speedometer:** Indicates the current vehicle speed.



**Engine coolant temperature gauge:** Indicates engine coolant temperature. At normal operating temperature, the needle will be in the normal range (between “H” and “C”). **If it enters the red section, the engine is overheating. Stop the vehicle as soon as safely possible, switch off the engine and let the engine cool.**



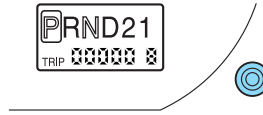
Never remove the coolant reservoir cap while the engine is running or hot.

**Odometer:** Registers the total miles (kilometers) of the vehicle.

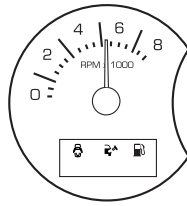


## Instrument Cluster

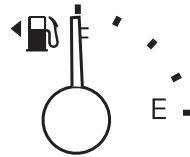
**Trip odometer:** Registers the miles (kilometers) of individual journeys. To reset, tap on the trip reset button to toggle the display between the trip and the odometer. Holding the reset button for one or two seconds will reset the trip odometer to zero.



**Tachometer:** Indicates the engine speed in revolutions per minute. Driving with your tachometer pointer continuously at the top of the scale may damage the engine.



**Fuel gauge:** Indicates approximately how much fuel is left in the fuel tank (when the ignition is in the ON position). The fuel gauge may vary slightly when the vehicle is in motion or on a grade.



The arrow near the fuel pump icon indicates which side of the vehicle the fuel filler door is located.

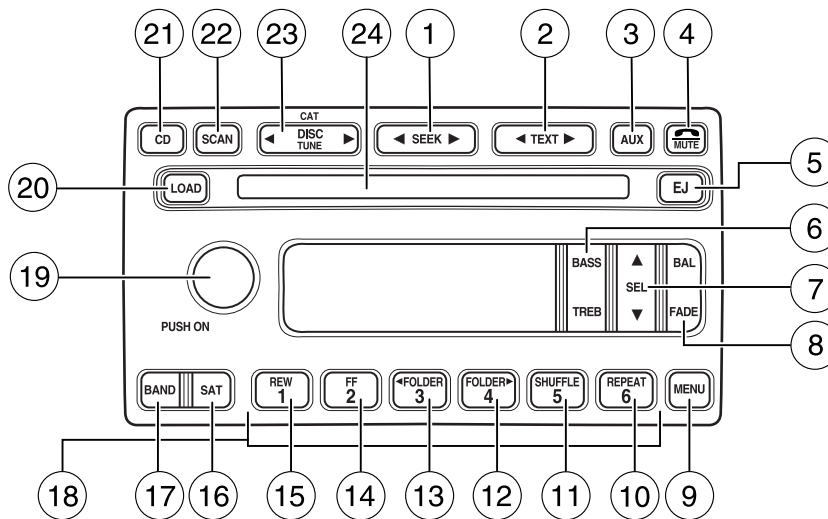
Refer to *Filling the tank* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter for more information.



## Entertainment Systems

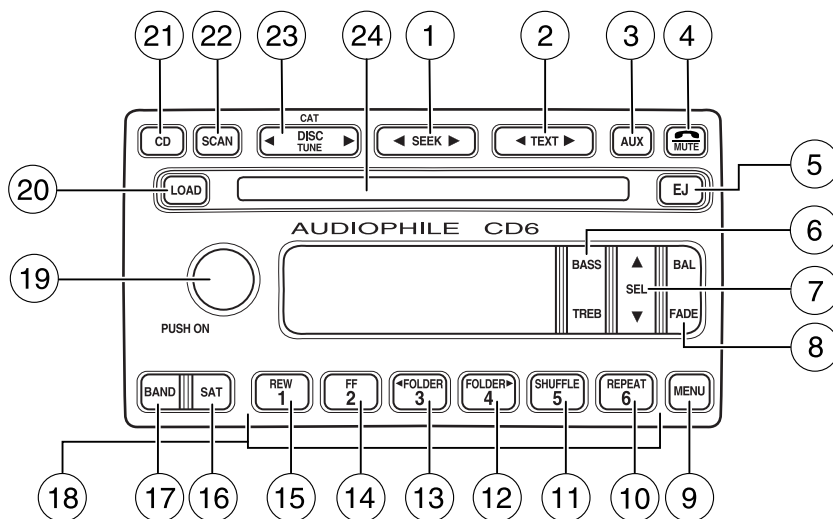
### AUDIO SYSTEMS

#### Premium Satellite Compatible AM/FM Stereo In-Dash Six CD/MP3 Radio (if equipped)



## Entertainment Systems

### Audiophile Satellite Compatible AM/FM Stereo In-Dash Six CD/MP3 Radio (if equipped)



1. **SEEK:** Press and release  
SEEK ◀ / ▶ for previous/next  
strong station or track.



2. **TEXT:** The filename (Fi), song  
title (So), artist text (Ar) or album  
text (AL) may be viewed while  
playing an MP3 selection. When MP3 selection text is shown on the  
message display its corresponding text indicator (Fi, So, Ar, or AL) is  
shown in the elapsed time display. Press TEXT to scroll through the text  
fields. The display will scroll all of the text in the current field before  
changing to the next field. (TEXT must be pressed within 3 seconds of  
the previous button press to proceed to the next/last text display.)



TEXT is also available when equipped with Satellite radio. Your radio  
comes equipped with Satellite ready capability. The kit to enable Satellite  
reception is available through your dealer. Detailed Satellite instructions  
are included with the dealer installed kit. *Dealer installed satellite kit  
only available in the continental United States.*

18

2006 Escape (204)  
Owners Guide (post-2002-fmt)  
USA (fus)

## Entertainment Systems

3. **AUX:** This function is not operational.



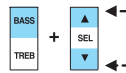
4. **MUTE:** Press to MUTE playing media; press again to return to playing media



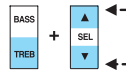
5. **EJ:** Press to eject a CD. Press EJ and a memory preset to eject a specific disc. Press and hold to eject all loaded discs.



6. **Bass:** Press BASS; then press SEL ▼ / ▲ to decrease/increase the bass output.



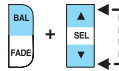
**Treble:** Press TREB; then press SEL ▼ / ▲ to decrease/increase the treble output.



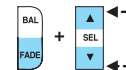
7. **Select:** Use with Bass, Treble, Balance, Fade and other menu functions.



8. **Balance:** Press BAL; then press SEL ▼ / ▲ to shift sound to the left/right speakers.



**Fade:** Press FADE; then press SEL ▼ / ▲ to shift sound to the rear/front speakers.



9. **Menu:** Press to access the following features:



**RDS (if equipped):** Press and hold MENU to access RDS on/off. Use SEL to toggle RDS on/off. Press MENU again to access Traffic mode, Program Type mode or Show Type mode. (MENU must be pressed within 10 seconds to proceed to the next RDS mode).

The Federal Communications Commission (FCC) and the Canadian Radio and Telecommunications Commission (CRTC) recommend that FM radio broadcasters use RDS technology to transmit information. FM radio stations are independently operated and individually elect to use RDS technology to transmit station ID and program type as desired.

## Entertainment Systems

**Traffic:** Allows you to hear traffic broadcasts. With the feature ON, press SEEK or SCAN to find a station broadcasting a traffic report (if it is broadcasting RDS data). *Traffic information is not available in most U.S. markets.*

**FIND Program type:** Allows you to search RDS-equipped stations for a certain category of music format: Classic, Country, Info, Jazz, Oldies, R&B, Religious, Rock, Soft, Top 40.

Press and hold MENU until RDS XX is shown in the display. Press MENU until FIND appears in the display. Use SEL to scroll through music types. Press SEEK or SCAN to search for a station playing the requested music category.

**Show TYPE:** Displays the station's call letters or music format. Press and hold MENU until RDS XX is shown in the display. Press MENU until SHOW appears in the display. Use SEL to select NAME or TYPE.

**Occupancy mode:** Press MENU until occupancy mode appears in the display. Press SEL to select ALL SEATS, DRIVER SEAT or REAR SEATS occupancy mode.

**Compression:** Brings soft and loud CD passages together for a more consistent listening level when in CD mode. Press MENU until compression status is displayed. Press the SEL control to enable the compression feature when COMPRESS OFF is displayed. Press the SEL control again to disable the feature when COMPRESS ON is displayed.

**Autoset:** Allows you to set the strongest local radio stations without losing your original manually set preset stations for AM/FM1/FM2. Press MENU until AUTOSSET appears in the display. Press SEL to toggle ON/OFF. When the six strongest stations are filled, the station stored in preset 1 will begin playing. If there are less than six strong stations, the system will store the last one in the remaining presets.

**Speed sensitive volume:** Radio volume changes automatically and slightly with vehicle speed to compensate for road and wind noise. Recommended level is 1–3. Level 0 turns the feature off and level 7 is the maximum setting. Press MENU until SPEED VOL X appears in the display. Then press SEL to increase (▲) or decrease (▼) the volume setting. The level will appear in the display.

**Setting the clock:** Press MENU until SELECT HOUR or SELECT MINS is displayed. Use SEL to manually increase (▲) or decrease (▼) the hours/minutes. Press MENU again to disengage clock mode.

## Entertainment Systems

**Folder/Track Mode:** In MP3 mode, press MENU until MODE appears in the display. Use SEL to toggle between FOLDER (only tracks within selected folder are accessible) or TRACK (all tracks on disc are accessible) MODE.

10. **REPEAT:** Repeats current CD/MP3 track when active (ON). Press to show repeat status. Press again to toggle status.



11. **SHUFFLE:** Plays CD/MP3 tracks in random order when active (ON). Press to show shuffle status. Press again to toggle status.



12. **FOLDER** ► : Press to access the next MP3 directory.



13. **FOLDER** ◀ : Press to access the previous MP3 directory.



14. **FF** (Fast forward): In CD mode, press until desired selection is reached.



15. **REW** (Rewind): In CD mode, press until desired selection is reached.



16. **SAT (if equipped):** Your radio comes equipped with Satellite Ready capability. The kit to enable the Satellite reception is available through your dealer. Detailed satellite instructions are included with the dealer installed kit. *Dealer installed satellite kit only available in the continental United States.*



17. **BAND:** Press to toggle between AM/FM1/FM2 frequency band.

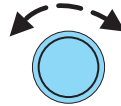


18. **Memory presets:** To set a station: Select frequency band, tune to a station, press and hold a preset button until sound returns.



## Entertainment Systems

19. **Power/volume:** Press to turn ON/OFF; turn to increase or decrease volume levels.



20. **Load:** Press to load a CD. Press LOAD and a memory preset to load to a specific disc slot. Press and hold to load up to six discs.



21. **CD:** Press to enter CD mode.



**CD units are designed to play commercially pressed 4.75 in (12 cm) audio compact discs only. Due to technical incompatibility, certain recordable and re-recordable compact discs may not function correctly when used in Ford CD players. Irregular shaped CDs, CDs with a scratch protection film attached, and CDs with homemade paper (adhesive) labels should not be inserted into the CD player. The label may peel and cause the CD to become jammed. It is recommended that homemade CDs be identified with permanent felt tip marker rather than adhesive labels. Ballpoint pens may damage CDs. Please contact your authorized dealer for further information.**

22. **Scan:** Press SCAN to hear a brief sampling of radio stations or CD/MP3 tracks. Press again to stop.



23. **Disc/Tune:** Press ◀ or ▶ to manually tune down/up the radio frequency band, or to listen to the previous/next CD.



**CAT:** CAT is only available when equipped with Satellite Radio. Your radio comes equipped with Satellite ready capability. The kit to enable Satellite reception is available through your dealer. Detailed Satellite instructions are included with the dealer installed kit. *Dealer installed satellite kit only available in the continental United States.*

For information regarding SIRIUS Satellite Radio, please call toll-free 888-539-SIRIUS (888-539-7474) or visit the SIRIUS website at [www.siriusradio.com](http://www.siriusradio.com)

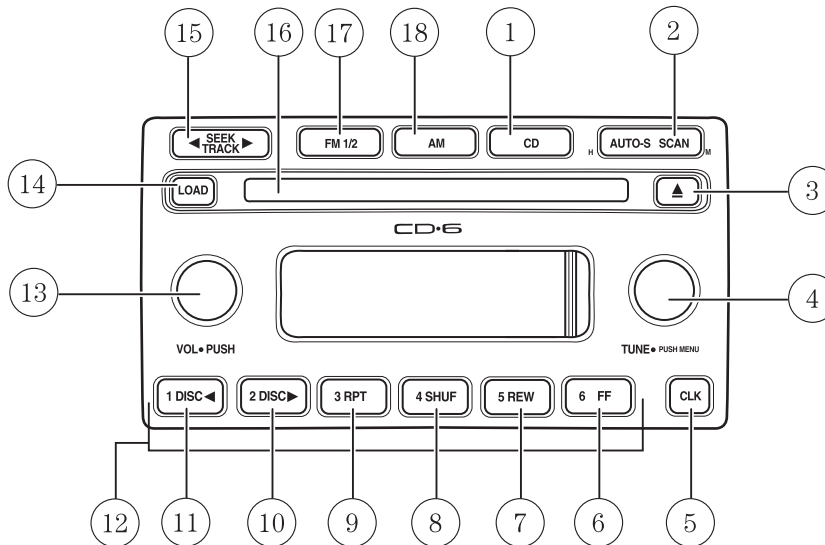
24. **CD slot:** Insert a CD, label side up.

22

2006 Escape (204)  
Owners Guide (post-2002-fmt)  
USA (fus)

## Entertainment Systems

### AM/FM stereo in-dash six CD modular audio (if equipped)



1. **CD:** To begin CD play, press LOAD. When the system is ready to accept a disc, IN will appear on the radio display. You may then insert a CD. The system will load the CD and begin play after a short pause. The disc number and track number will illuminate in the display. If a CD is already loaded into the system, press CD to enter CD mode and select the desired CD to play.



**CD units are designed to play commercially pressed 4.75 in (12 cm) audio compact discs only. Due to technical incompatibility, certain recordable and re-recordable compact discs may not function correctly when used in Ford CD players. Irregular shaped CDs, CDs with a scratch protection film attached, and CDs with homemade paper (adhesive) labels should not be inserted into the CD player. The label may peel and cause the CD to become jammed. It is recommended that homemade CDs be identified with permanent felt tip marker rather than adhesive labels. Ballpoint pens may damage CDs. Please contact your dealer for further information.**

## Entertainment Systems

2. **AUTO — SCAN:** AUTO: Auto memory tuning allows you to set strong radio stations without losing your original manually set preset stations.



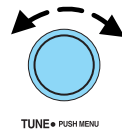
Press the AM or FM1/2 control to select a frequency. Press and momentarily hold the AUTO-S control. The system will beep. When the first six strong stations are filled, the strongest station will start playing. Press AUTO-S to select from the stored stations. One stored station will be selected and played each time the control is pressed. The frequency and the channel number will be displayed.

**SCAN:** Scan works in radio and CD mode. Press SCAN to hear a brief sampling of all listenable stations on the frequency band or the first ten seconds of each track. Press SCAN again to stop.

3. **Eject:** Press to eject the CD currently playing. Press CD plus the preset number to eject a specific CD. Press and hold to eject all CDs.



4. **TUNE — MENU:** Press to enter Menu mode. Press repeatedly to scroll through the following options:



**Bass:** Press the control until BASS appears in the display. Turn the control to increase/decrease the level of bass.

**Mid-range (if equipped):** Press the control until MID appears in the display. Turn the control to increase/decrease the level of mid-range.

**Treble:** Press the control until TREB appears in the display. Turn the control to increase/decrease the level of treble.

**Fade:** Press the control until FADE appears in the display. Turn the control to adjust the sound between the rear and front speakers.

**Balance:** Press the control until BAL appears in the display. Turn the control to adjust the sound between the left and right speakers.

5. **CLK (Clock):** Press to alternate between clock display and audio display.



**Note:** If the audio operation is selected while the clock mode is on, the selected audio mode will be displayed for ten seconds, then the display will revert to the clock mode.



## Entertainment Systems

**Setting the clock:** Press and hold CLK for approximately two seconds until a beep is heard. The clock's current time will flash. Press SCAN on the minute set control (M) to set the minutes. Press AUTO-S on the hour set control (H) to adjust the hours. Press CLK again to disengage clock mode.

6. **FF (Fast forward):** In CD mode, press and hold to advance through a track at high speed.



7. **REW (Rewind):** In CD mode, press and hold to reverse through a track at high speed.



8. **SHUF (Shuffle):** Press to play all tracks on the current CD in random order.



9. **RPT (Repeat):** Press to repeat the current CD track. The track will repeat continuously until RPT is pressed again.



10. **DISC** ► : Press to skip forward to the beginning of the next CD.

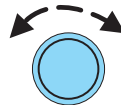


11. **DISC** ◀ : Press to skip back to the beginning of the previous CD.



12. **Memory presets:** To set a station: Select frequency band AM/FM; tune to a station, press and hold a preset button until sound returns.

13. **Volume/ON/OFF:** Press to turn ON/OFF. Turn to increase/decrease the level of volume.



14. **LOAD:** The load feature allows you to load up to six single CDs into the audio system. Press LOAD. "In" will appear in the display when the system is ready. Insert the CD.



**Autoload:** To load up to six CDs into the system: Press and hold LOAD until a beep is heard. When "In" is displayed, insert the desired CD. When "In" is displayed again, insert the next CD. Continue until all six are loaded (if desired).

## Entertainment Systems

15. **SEEK — TRACK:** In radio mode, press to find the next (▶) or previous (◀) listenable station on the frequency band.



In CD mode, press to listen the next (▶) or previous (◀) track.

16. **CD door:** Insert CDs label side up.



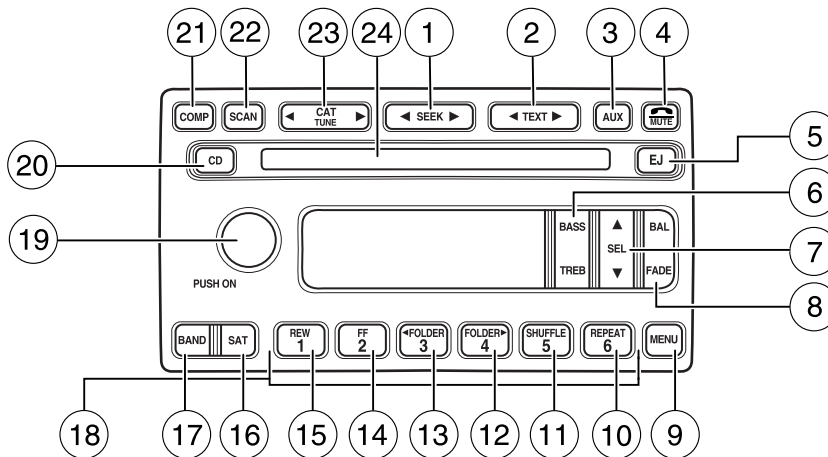
17. **FM 1/2:** Press to enter FM mode. Press to toggle between FM1 and FM2.



18. **AM:** Press to enter AM mode.



### Satellite Compatible AM/FM Stereo In-Dash Single CD/MP3 Radio (if equipped)



1. **SEEK:** Press and release SEEK ◀ / ▶ for previous/next strong station or track.



## Entertainment Systems

2. **TEXT:** The filename (Fi), song title (So), artist text (Ar) or album text (AL) may be viewed while playing an MP3 selection. When MP3 selection text is shown on the message display, its corresponding text indicator (Fi, So, Ar, or AL) is shown in the elapsed time display. Press TEXT to scroll through the text fields. The display will scroll through all of the text in the current field before changing to the next field. (TEXT must be pressed within 3 seconds of the previous press to proceed to the next/last text display. The last text field shown on the display will become the new display message default.



TEXT is also available when equipped with Satellite radio. Your radio comes equipped with Satellite ready capability. The kit to enable Satellite reception is available through your dealer. Detailed Satellite instructions are included with the dealer installed kit. *Dealer installed satellite kit only available in the continental United States.*

3. **AUX:** This control is not operational.



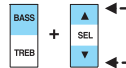
4. **MUTE:** Press to MUTE playing media; press again to return to playing media



5. **EJ:** Press to eject a CD.



6. **Bass:** Press BASS; then press SEL ▼ / ▲ to decrease/increase the bass output.



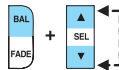
**Treble:** Press TREB; then press SEL ▼ / ▲ to decrease/increase the treble output.



7. **Select:** Use with Bass, Treble, Balance, Fade and other menu selections.

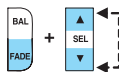


8. **Balance:** Press BAL; then press SEL ▼ / ▲ to shift sound to the left/right speakers.

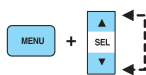


## Entertainment Systems

**Fade:** Press FADE; then press SEL ▼ / ▲ to shift sound to the rear/front speakers.



9. **Menu:** Press MENU and SEL to access AUTOSET, Speed sensitive volume and Setting the clock.



**Autoset:** Press MENU until AUTOSET appears in the display. Press SEL to toggle ON/OFF. Allows you to set the strongest local radio stations without losing your original manually set preset stations for AM/FM1/FM2. When the six strongest stations are filled, the station stored in preset 1 will begin playing. If there are less than six strong stations, the system will store the last one in the remaining presets.

**Speed sensitive volume:** Press MENU until SPEED VOL X appears in the display. Then press SEL to increase (▲) or decrease (▼) the volume setting. The level will appear in the display. Radio volume changes automatically and slightly with vehicle speed to compensate for road and wind noise. Recommended level is 1–3. Level 0 turns the feature off and level 7 is the maximum setting.

**Setting the clock:** Press MENU until SELECT HOUR or SELECT MINUTE is displayed. Use SEL to manually increase (▲) or decrease (▼) the hours/minutes. Press MENU again to disengage clock mode.

**Folder/Track mode:** In MP3 mode, press MENU until MODE appears in the display. Use SEL to toggle between FOLDER (only tracks within selected folder are accessible) or TRACK (all tracks on disc are accessible) MODE.

10. **REPEAT:** Press to repeat the current CD/MP3 track.



11. **SHUFFLE:** Press to play the CD/MP3 tracks on the current disc in random order.



12. **FOLDER▶** : Press to access the next MP3 directory.



13. **FOLDER◀** : Press to access the previous MP3 directory.



## Entertainment Systems

14. **FF** (Fast forward): In CD/MP3 mode, press until desired selection is reached.



15. **REW** (Rewind): In CD/MP3 mode, press until desired selection is reached.



16. **SAT (if equipped)**: Your radio comes equipped with Satellite Ready capability. The kit to enable the Satellite reception is available through your dealer. Detailed satellite instructions are included with the dealer installed kit. *Dealer installed satellite kit only available in the continental United States.*



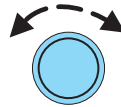
17. **BAND**: Press to toggle between AM/FM1/FM2 frequency band.



18. **Memory presets**: To set a station: Select frequency band; tune to a station, press and hold a preset button until sound returns.



19. **Power/volume**: Press to turn ON/OFF; turn to increase or decrease volume levels.



20. **CD**: Press to enter CD mode.



**CD units are designed to play commercially pressed 4.75 in (12 cm) audio compact discs only. Due to technical incompatibility, certain recordable and re-recordable compact discs may not function correctly when used in Ford CD players. Irregular shaped CDs, CDs with a scratch protection film attached, and CDs with homemade paper (adhesive) labels should not be inserted into the CD player. The label may peel and cause the CD to become jammed. It is recommended that homemade CDs be identified with permanent felt tip marker rather than adhesive labels. Ballpoint pens may damage CDs. Please contact your authorized dealer for further information.**

## Entertainment Systems

21. **COMP** (Compression): Brings soft and loud CD passages together for a more consistent listening level when in CD mode. Press COMP to turn the feature ON/OFF.



22. **Scan**: Press SCAN to hear a brief sampling of radio stations or CD/MP3 tracks. Press again to stop.



23. **CAT/Tune**: Press ◀ or ▶ to manually tune down/up the radio frequency band.



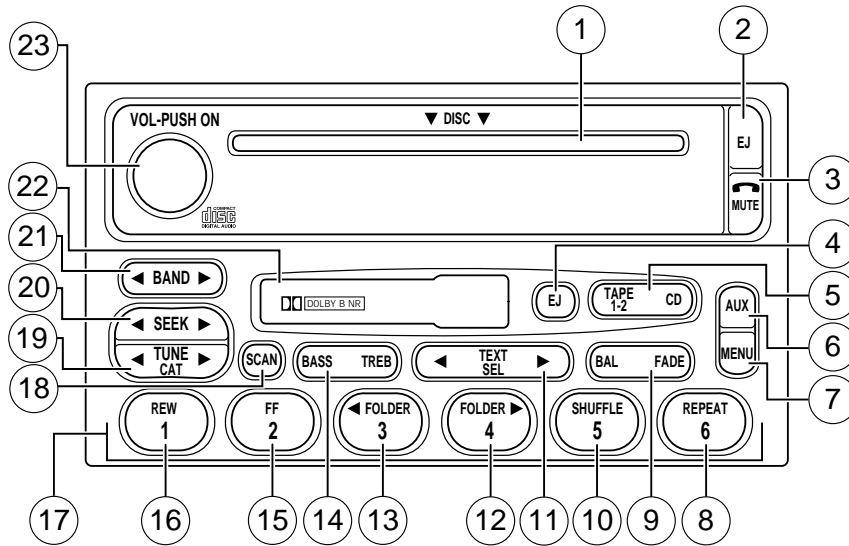
**CAT**: CAT is only available when equipped with Satellite Radio. Your radio comes equipped with Satellite ready capability. The kit to enable Satellite reception is available through your dealer. Detailed Satellite instructions are included with the dealer installed kit. *Dealer installed satellite kit only available in the continental United States.*

For information regarding SIRIUS Satellite Radio, please call toll-free 888-539-SIRIUS (888-539-7474) or visit the SIRIUS website at [www.siriusradio.com](http://www.siriusradio.com)

24. **CD slot**: Insert a CD with the label side up.

## Entertainment Systems

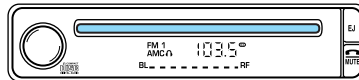
### Premium Satellite Compatible AM/FM Stereo/Cassette/Single CD/MP3 (if equipped)



1. **CD slot:** Insert a CD with the label side up.

**CD units are designed to play commercially pressed 4.75 in (12 cm) audio compact discs only. Due to technical incompatibility, certain recordable and re-recordable compact discs may not function correctly when used in Ford CD players. Irregular shaped CDs, CDs with a scratch protection film attached, and CDs with homemade paper (adhesive) labels should not be inserted into the CD player. The label may peel and cause the CD to become jammed. It is recommended that homemade CDs be identified with permanent felt tip marker rather than adhesive labels. Ballpoint pens may damage CDs. Please contact your authorized dealer for further information.**

2. **CD Eject:** Press to eject a CD. The radio will resume playing.



## Entertainment Systems

3. **Mute:** Press to MUTE playing media; press again to return to the playing media.



4. **Tape Eject:** Press to eject the cassette. The radio will resume playing.



5. **Tape 1-2/CD:** Press to begin tape play. If a cassette is already playing, press to change playing sides.



**CD:** If a CD is loaded in the radio, pressing CD will cause the CD to begin playing.



6. **AUX:** Press to toggle between the current playing media and DVD (if equipped).



7. **MENU:** Press to access the following functions:



**Clock:** Press MENU until SELECT HOUR or SELECT MINUTE is displayed. Press ◀ SEL ▶ to decrease/ increase hours or minutes.

**Compression:** In CD mode, press to bring soft and loud passages together for a more consistent listening level. Press MENU until COMPRESS is displayed. Use SEL to toggle on/off.

**Speed sensitive volume:** Radio volume changes automatically and slightly with vehicle speed to compensate for road and wind noise. Recommended level is 1-3. Level 0 turns the feature off and level 7 is the maximum setting. Press MENU until SPEED VOL X appears in the display. Then press SEL to increase/decrease the volume setting. The level will appear in the display.



## Entertainment Systems

**Dolby:** In tape mode, press MENU until DOLBY B XX appears in the display. Press SEL to toggle ON/OFF.

The Dolby® noise reduction system is manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories Licensing Corporation. Dolby® and the double-D symbol are registered trademarks of Dolby Laboratories Licensing Corporation.

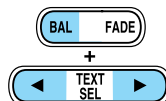
**Folder/Track Mode:** In MP3 mode, press MENU until MODE appears in the display. Use SEL to toggle between FOLDER (only tracks within selected folder are accessible) or TRACK (all tracks on disk are accessible) MODE.

**Autoset:** Press MENU until AUTOSSET appears in the display. Press SEL to toggle on/off. Allows you to set the strongest local stations without losing your original memory preset stations for AM/FM1/FM2. When the six strongest stations are filled, the station stored in preset 1 will begin playing. If there are less than six strong stations, the system will store the last one in the remaining presets.

8. **REPEAT:** Press to repeat the current CD/MP3 track. Press to show repeat status. Press again to toggle status.



9. **Balance:** Press BAL; then press SEL ◀ / ▶ to shift sound to the left/right speakers.



**Fade:** Press FADE; then press SEL ◀ / ▶ to shift sound to the rear/front speakers.



10. **SHUFFLE:** In CD/MP3 mode, press to play tracks in random order. Press to show shuffle status. Press again to toggle status.



11. **TEXT/SEL:** The filename, song title, artist text or album text may be viewed while playing an MP3 selection. Press TEXT to scroll through the text fields. The display will scroll through all of the text in the current field before changing to the next field. (TEXT must be pressed within three seconds of the previous



## Entertainment Systems


button press to proceed to the next/last text display. ) The last text field shown on the display will become the new display message default.

TEXT is also available when equipped with Satellite radio. Your radio comes equipped with Satellite ready capability. The kit to enable Satellite reception is available through your dealer. Detailed Satellite instructions are included with the dealer installed kit. *Dealer installed satellite kit only available in the continental United States.*



**Select:** Use with Bass, Treble, Balance, Fade and other menu selections.

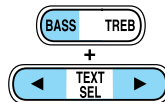
12. **FOLDER**  : Press to access the next MP3 directory folder.





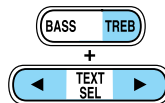
13. **FOLDER**  : Press to access the previous MP3 directory folder.



14. **Bass:** Press BASS; then press SEL  /  to decrease/increase the bass output.



**Treble:** Press TREB; then press SEL  /  to decrease/increase the treble output.



15. **Fast Forward (FF):** In CD mode, press and hold to fast forward. In tape mode, press to activate fast forward. Press FF again to return to play.



16. **Rewind (REW):** In CD mode, press and hold to reverse CD. In tape mode, press to rewind. Press REW again to return to play.



17. **Memory preset buttons:** To set a station: Press BAND to select the frequency band (AM/FM1/FM2) tune to a station, press and hold a preset button until sound returns.

## Entertainment Systems

18. **Scan:** Press to hear a brief sampling of all listenable stations, tape selections or CD tracks. Press again to stop.



19. **Tune/CAT:** TUNE: Works in radio mode only. Press TUNE ◀ / ▶ to change frequency down/up.



**CAT:** CAT is only available when equipped with Satellite Radio. Your radio comes equipped with Satellite ready capability. The kit to enable Satellite reception is available through your dealer. Detailed Satellite instructions are included with the dealer installed kit. *Dealer installed satellite kit only available in the continental United States.*

20. **Seek:** Press and release SEEK ◀ / ▶ for previous/next strong station, tape selection or CD track.

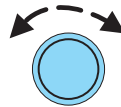


21. **BAND:** Press to toggle through AM/FM1/FM2 frequency bands.



22. **Cassette door:** Insert the cassette with the opening to the right.

23. **Power/volume:** Press to turn ON/OFF; turn to increase/decrease volume.



### Accessory delay

With accessory delay, the window switches, moon roof (if equipped) and audio system may be used for up to ten minutes after the ignition switch is turned off or until either front door is opened.

### GENERAL AUDIO INFORMATION

**Radio frequencies:** AM and FM frequencies are established by the Federal Communications Commission (FCC) and the Canadian Radio and Telecommunications Commission (CRTC). Those frequencies are:

AM - 530, 540–1700, 1710 kHz

FM- 87.7, 87.9–107.7, 107.9 MHz

## Entertainment Systems

**Radio reception factors:** There are three factors that can affect radio reception:

- Distance/strength: The further you travel from a station, the weaker the signal and the weaker the reception.
- Terrain: Hills, mountains, tall buildings, power lines, electric fences, traffic lights and thunderstorms can interfere with your reception.
- Station overload: When you pass a broadcast tower, a stronger signal may overtake a weaker one and play while the weak station frequency is displayed.

### **Cassette/player care:**

Do:

- Use only cassettes that are 90 minutes long or less.
- Tighten very loose tapes by inserting a finger or pencil into the hole and turning the hub.
- Remove loose labels before inserting tapes.
- Allow tapes which have been subjected to extreme heat, humidity or cold to reach a moderate temperature before playing.
- Clean the cassette player head with a cassette cleaning cartridge after 10–12 hours of play to maintain good sound/operation.

Don't:

- Expose tapes to direct sunlight, extreme humidity, heat or cold.
- Leave tapes in the cassette player for a long time when not being played.

### **CD/CD player care:**

Do:

- Handle discs by their edges only. Never touch the playing surface.
- Inspect discs before playing. Clean only with an approved CD cleaner and wipe from the center out.

Don't:

- Expose discs to direct sunlight or heat sources for extended periods of time.
- Clean using a circular motion.

## Entertainment Systems

**CD units are designed to play commercially pressed 4.75 in (12 cm) audio compact discs only. Due to technical incompatibility, certain recordable and re-recordable compact discs may not function correctly when used in Ford CD players. Dirty, warped or damaged CDs, irregular shaped CDs, CDs with a scratch protection film attached, and CDs with homemade paper (adhesive) labels should not be inserted into the CD player. The label may peel and cause the CD to become jammed. It is recommended that homemade CDs be identified with permanent felt tip marker rather than adhesive labels. Ballpoint pens may damage CDs. Please contact your authorized dealer for further information.**

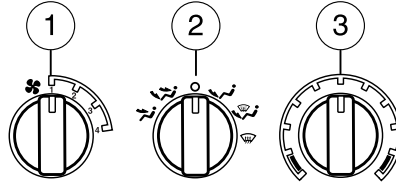
**Audio system warranty and service:** Refer to the *Warranty Guide* for audio system warranty information. If service is necessary, see your dealer or qualified technician.

## Climate Controls


### HEATER ONLY SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

1. **Fan speed adjustment:** Controls the volume of air circulated in the vehicle.

2. **Air flow selections:** Controls the direction of the airflow in the vehicle. See the following for a brief description on each control.




 : Distributes outside air through the instrument panel vents.

 : Distributes outside air through the instrument panel vents and the floor vents.

**O (OFF):** Outside air is shut out and the fan will not operate.


 : Distributes outside air through the floor vents.

 : Distributes outside air through the windshield defroster vents and floor vents.


 : Distributes outside air through the windshield defroster vents.

3. **Temperature selection:** Controls the temperature of the airflow in the vehicle.

### Operating tips

- To reduce fog build up on the windshield during humid weather, place the air flow selector in the  position.
- To reduce humidity build up inside the vehicle during cold or warm weather, do not drive with the air flow selector in the OFF position.
- Do not put objects under the front seats that will interfere with the air flow to the rear seats.
- Remove any snow, ice or leaves from the air intake area at the base of the windshield.

To aid in side window defogging/demisting in cold weather:

1. Select .
2. Adjust the temperature control to maintain comfort.
3. Set the fan speed to the highest setting.
4. Direct the outer instrument panel vents toward the side windows.

To increase airflow to the outer instrument panel vents, close the vents located in the middle of the instrument panel.

## Climate Controls

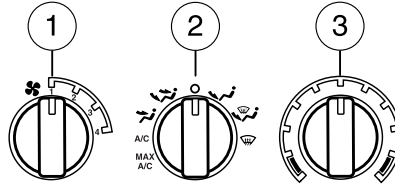


Do not place objects on top of the instrument panel as these objects may become projectiles in a collision or sudden stop.

### MANUAL HEATING AND AIR CONDITIONING SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

1. **Fan speed adjustment:** Controls the volume of air circulated in the vehicle.

2. **Air flow selections:** Controls the direction of the airflow in the vehicle. See the following for a brief description on each control.



**MAX A/C:** Uses recirculated air to cool the vehicle. Air flows from the instrument panel vents only.

**A/C:** Uses outside air to cool the vehicle. Air flows from the instrument panel vents only.

: Distributes outside air through the instrument panel vents.

**O (OFF):** Outside air is shut out and the fan will not operate.

: Distributes outside air through the instrument panel vents and the floor vents.

: Distributes outside air through the floor vents.

: Distributes outside air through the windshield defroster vents and floor vents. The air conditioner will automatically turn on to dehumidify the air.

: Distributes outside air through the windshield defroster vents. The air conditioner will automatically turn on to dehumidify the air.

3. **Temperature selection:** Controls the temperature of the airflow in the vehicle.

#### Operating tips

- To reduce fog build up on the windshield during humid weather, place the air flow selector in the position.
- To reduce humidity build up inside the vehicle: do not drive with the air flow selector in the O (OFF) or MAX A/C position.

## Climate Controls

- Under normal weather conditions, do not leave the air flow selector in MAX A/C or O (OFF) when the vehicle is parked. This allows the vehicle to “breathe” using the outside air inlet vents.
- Do not put objects under the front seats that will interfere with the airflow to the back seats.
- Remove any snow, ice or leaves from the air intake area at the base of the windshield.

To aid in side window defogging/demisting in cold weather:

1. Select A/C.
2. Adjust the temperature control to maintain comfort.
3. Set the fan speed to 4.
4. Direct the outer instrument panel vents towards the side windows.

To increase airflow to the outer instrument panel vents, close the vents located in the middle of the instrument panel.



Do not place objects on top of the instrument panel as these objects may become projectiles in a collision or sudden stop.

### REAR WINDOW DEFROSTER

The rear defroster control is located on the instrument panel. Press to clear the rear window of thin ice and fog. The small LED will illuminate when activated.



Ensure that the ignition is in the 3 (RUN) position in order to operate the rear window defroster.

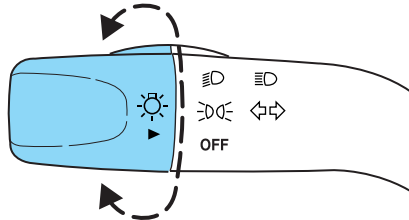
The defroster turns off automatically after 15 minutes or when the ignition is turned to the 1 (LOCK) position. To manually turn off the defroster before 15 minutes have passed, push the control a second time.



## Lights

### HEADLAMP CONTROL ☼

Rotate the headlamp control to the first position ☼ to turn on the parking lamps. Rotate to the second position ☼ to also turn on the headlamps.



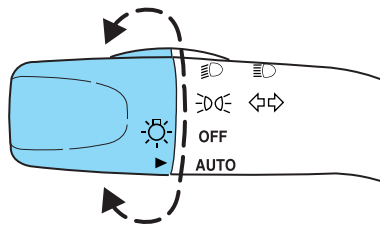
### Headlamp battery saver

The battery saver will shut off the exterior lamps 10 minutes after the ignition switch has been turned off if the headlamp control is in the ☼ position. The system will not shut off the parking lamps if the headlamp control is in the ☼ position.

### Autolamp control (if equipped)

The autolamp system sets the headlamps to turn on and off automatically. The autolamp control, located on the headlamp switch, will:

- turn on the lamps automatically at night
- turn off the lamps automatically during the daylight
- keep the lamps on for up to three minutes after the key is turned to OFF.



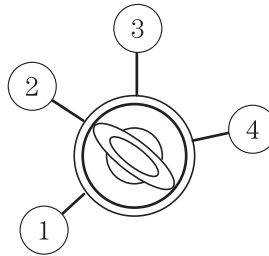
See *Autolamp delay system (if equipped)* to set the auto headlamp off delay time.

## Lights

### **Autolamp delay system (if equipped)**

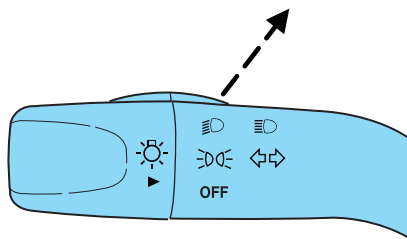
If your vehicle has an autolamp delay feature, you can set the delay time to keep the headlights on for up to three minutes after the key is turned OFF. The delay time is set to 20 seconds at the factory, but the delay time may be changed by following the steps below (Steps 1 through 6 must be done within 10 seconds):

1. Turn the key to the 1 (LOCK) position.
2. Rotate the headlamp control to the autolamp position.
3. Rotate the headlamp control to the OFF position.
4. Turn the key to the 3 (RUN) position.
5. Turn the key back to the 1 (LOCK) position.
6. Turn the headlamp control to the autolamp position (the headlights should turn on).
7. Turn the headlamp control to the OFF position when the desired delay time (up to 3 minutes) has been reached.



### **High beams**

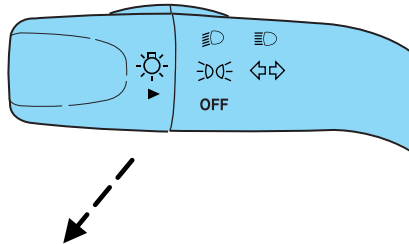
Push the lever toward the instrument panel to activate. Pull the lever towards you to deactivate.



## Lights

### Flash to pass

Pull toward you slightly to activate and release to deactivate.



### Daytime running lamps (DRL) (if equipped)

Turns the lowbeam headlamps on with a reduced output.

To activate:

- the ignition must be in the 3 (RUN) position.
- the headlamp control must be in the OFF, parking lamps or autolamp position.
- the parking brake must be released.



Always remember to turn on your headlamps at dusk or during inclement weather. The Daytime Running Lamp (DRL) system does not activate the tail lamps and generally may not provide adequate lighting during these conditions. Failure to activate your headlamps under these conditions may result in a collision.

### Smart park lamps (if equipped)

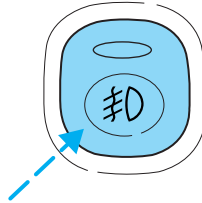
If your vehicle is equipped with the DRL and autolamp features, your park lamps will turn on automatically when lighting conditions are dark and DRLs are activated (the headlamp control is in the OFF position).

## Lights

### Foglamp control (if equipped)

Press the foglamp control, located on the instrument panel, to activate the foglamps. The foglamp indicator will illuminate when the foglamps are on. Press the foglamp control to deactivate the foglamps.

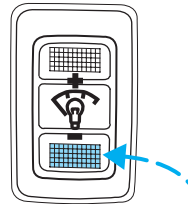
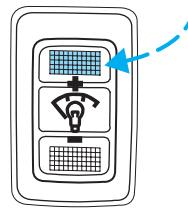
The foglamps will only operate with the parking lamps or headlamps on. When the highbeams are activated, the foglamps will not operate.



### PANEL DIMMER CONTROL

Use to adjust the brightness of the instrument panel.

- Push and hold top of control to brighten.
- Push and hold bottom of control to dim.



### AIMING THE HEADLAMPS

The headlamps on your vehicle are properly aimed at the assembly plant. If your vehicle has been in an accident the alignment of your headlamps should be checked by your authorized dealer.

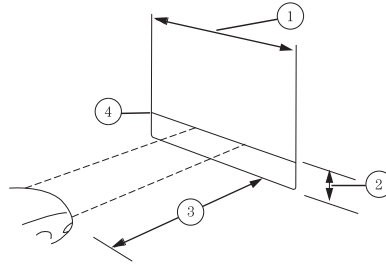
#### Vertical aim adjustment

1. Park the vehicle directly in front of a wall or screen on a level surface, approximately 25 feet (7.6 meters) away.

## Lights

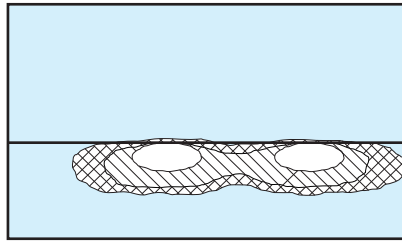
- (1) 8 feet (2.4 meters)
- (2) Center height of lamp to ground
- (3) 25 feet (7.6 meters)
- (4) Horizontal reference line

2. Measure the height from the center of your headlamp to the ground and mark an 8 foot (2.4 meter) horizontal reference line on the vertical wall or screen at this height (a piece of masking tape works well). The center of the lamp is marked by a 3.0 mm circle on the headlamp lens.

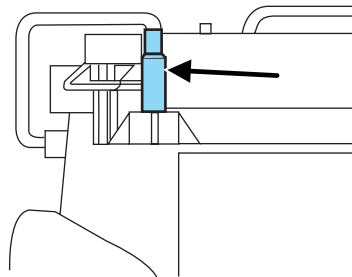


3. Turn on the low beam headlamps to illuminate the wall or screen and open the hood. Cover the left-hand headlamp with an opaque cloth.

4. On the wall or screen you will observe a light pattern with a distinct horizontal edge of high intensity light towards the right. If this edge is not at the horizontal reference line, the beam will need to be adjusted.



5. Locate the vertical adjuster on the headlamp, then use a 4 mm socket to turn the adjuster either counterclockwise (to adjust down) or clockwise (to adjust up) aligning the upper edge of the light pattern to the horizontal line.



6. Move the opaque cloth to cover the right-hand headlamp and repeat Steps 4 and 5 for the left-hand headlamp.

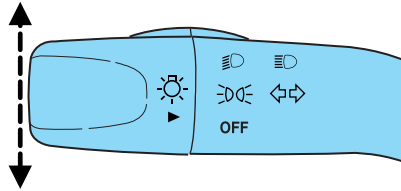
7. HORIZONTAL AIM IS NOT REQUIRED FOR THIS VEHICLE AND IS NON-ADJUSTABLE.

8. Close the hood and turn off the lamps.

## Lights

### TURN SIGNAL CONTROL ⇐⇒

- Push down to activate the left turn signal.
- Push up to activate the right turn signal.



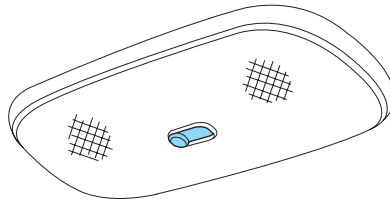
### INTERIOR LAMPS

#### Dome lamps and map lamps

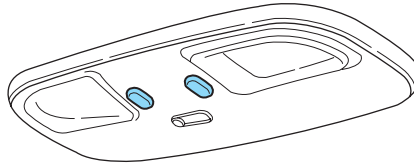
The front dome lamp is located overhead between the driver and passenger seats.

The dome lamp control has three positions:

- OFF: In this position, the lamp will not illuminate.
- DOOR: In this position, the dome lamp will illuminate only when a door is opened and will remain illuminated for 25 seconds after the door is shut.
- ON: In this position, the lamp will remain illuminated.



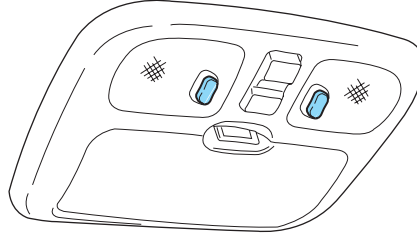
The map lamp controls (without moon roof) are located on the dome lamp. Press the button on either side of each map lamp to illuminate the lamps. Push the button again to turn off the lamps.



## Lights

For models equipped with a moon roof, the map lamps are located on the moon roof control panel. Press the button on either side of each map lamp to illuminate the lamps. Push the button again to turn off the lamps.

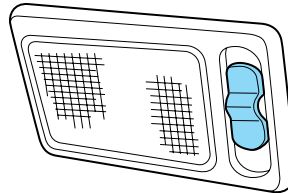
The map lamps will illuminate whenever a door is opened. After the door is shut, the lamps will remain illuminated for 25 seconds.



### Cargo and dome lamp

Rear cargo lamp equipped with an ON/OFF/DOOR control will light when:

- the doors are closed and the control is in the ON position.
- the control is in the DOOR position and any door is open.



When the control is in the OFF position, it will not illuminate when you open the doors.

### Interior lighting battery saver

The dome and/or cargo lamps will automatically extinguish after 10 minutes when the ignition key is OFF, a door has been left open and the dome and/or cargo lamp controls are in the DOOR position. Otherwise, interior lamps including the dome and/or cargo lamps will automatically extinguish after 30 minutes when the ignition key is OFF.

## BULB REPLACEMENT

### Headlamp Condensation

The headlamps are vented to equalize pressure. When moist air enters the headlamp(s) through the vents, there is a possibility that condensation can occur. This condensation is normal and will clear within 45 minutes of headlamp operation.

### Replacing exterior bulbs

Check the operation of all the bulbs frequently.

## Lights

### Using the right bulbs

Replacement bulbs are specified in the chart below. Headlamp bulbs must be marked with an authorized "D.O.T." for North America and an "E" for Europe to ensure lamp performance, light brightness and pattern and safe visibility. The correct bulbs will not damage the lamp assembly or void the lamp assembly warranty and will provide quality bulb burn time.

Function	Number of bulbs	Trade number
Park/turn lamps (front)	2	3157 AK (amber)
Headlamps (low beams)	2	H11
Headlamps (high beams)	2	H7
Rear stop/tail/sidemarker	2	3157K or 4157K
Rear turn lamps	2	3156
Backup lamp	2	3156
Foglamp (front)	2	H10
Center High-mount stop lamp	5	W5W
Rear license plate lamp	2	W5W
All replacement bulbs are clear in color except where noted.		
To replace all instrument panel lights - see your authorized dealer		

### Replacing the interior bulbs

Check the operation of all bulbs frequently.

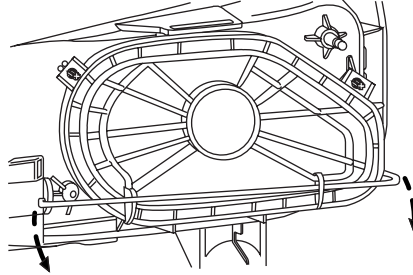
### Replacing headlamp bulbs

1. Make sure that the headlamp control is in the OFF position and open the hood.



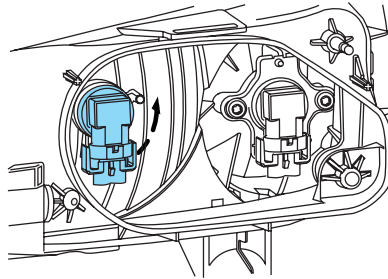
## Lights

2. Press down on the wire retainer to release it and access the back of the headlamp assembly.



### *Lowbeam bulb replacement*

3. Locate the outboard most bulb, turn it a ¼ turn to the inside of the vehicle and pull the bulb socket straight out to remove the bulb.

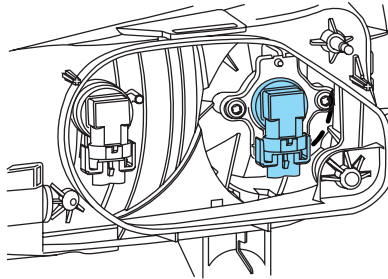


### *Highbeam bulb replacement*

4. Locate the bulb that is the most center in the vehicle, rotate the socket counterclockwise and pull the bulb socket straight out to remove the bulb.

5. Pull the bulb straight out of the socket and push in the new bulb.

6. To complete installation, follow the removal procedure in reverse order.



**Note:** The bulb's metal base gets very hot during headlamp operation. Be sure the bulb base is cool before handling.

**Note:** If the bulb is accidentally touched, it should be cleaned with rubbing alcohol before being used.

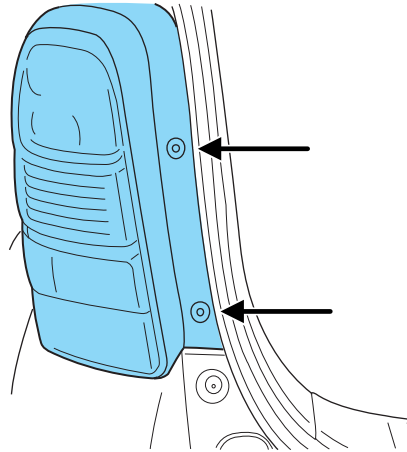
To complete installation, follow the removal procedure in reverse order.

## Lights

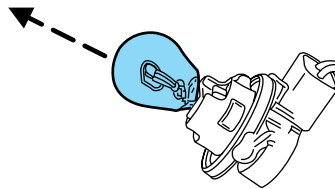
### **Replacing brake/tail/turn/backup lamp bulbs**

The brake/tail/turn/backup lamp bulbs are located in the tail lamp assembly, one just below the other. Follow the same steps to replace either bulb:

1. Make sure the headlamp switch is in the OFF position and then open the liftgate to expose the lamp assemblies.
2. Remove the two screws from the lamp assembly.
3. Carefully remove the lamp assembly by pulling it rearward to disengage snap features on the outward side of the lamp.
4. Twist the bulb socket counterclockwise and remove from lamp assembly.

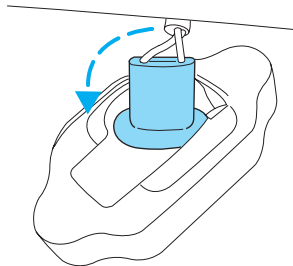


5. Pull the bulb straight out of the socket and push in the new bulb.
6. To complete installation, follow the removal procedure in reverse order.



### **Replacing license plate lamp bulbs**

1. Make sure the headlamp switch is in the OFF position and then pry the license plate lamp assembly (located above the license plate) from the liftgate.
2. Remove bulb socket from lamp assembly by turning counterclockwise.



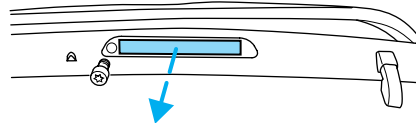
## Lights

3. Pull the bulb out from the socket and push in the new bulb.
4. Install the bulb socket in lamp assembly turning it clockwise.
5. To install, press the lamp assembly into liftgate.

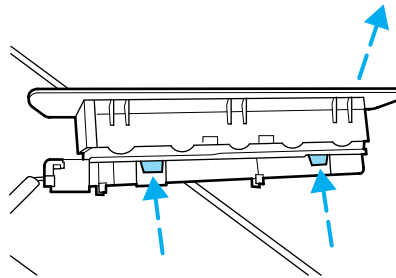
### **Replacing high-mount brake lamp bulbs**

To remove the lamp assembly:

1. Remove the two screws and move the lamp assembly away from the liftgate.

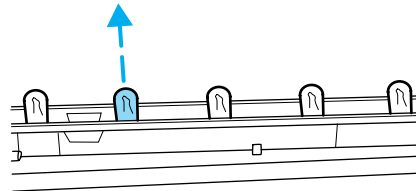


2. Remove the bulb holder from the lamp assembly by depressing the snaps.



3. Pull the bulb straight out of the socket and push in the new bulb.

To complete installation, follow the removal procedure in reverse order.



### **Replacing front parking lamp/turn signal bulbs**

For bulb replacement, see your authorized dealer.

### **Replacing foglamp bulbs**

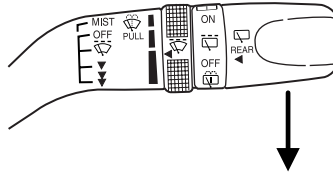
For bulb replacement, see your authorized dealer.

## Driver Controls

### MULTI-FUNCTION LEVER

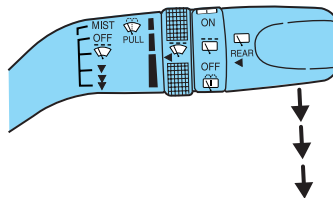
**Windshield wiper:** For intermittent operation, move control down one position.

Adjust the rotary control to the desired speed setting.

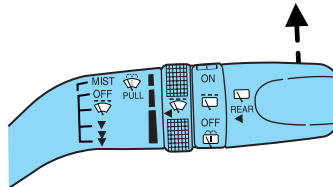


For normal or low speed wiper operation, move control down two positions from OFF.

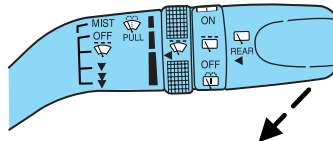
For high speed wiper operation, move control down three positions from OFF.



**Mist function:** To activate mist, push control up from the OFF position and release to get one wipe.




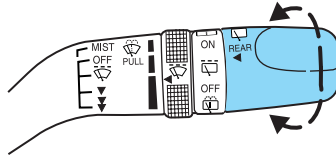
**Windshield washer:** To activate the windshield washer, pull control toward you. Release control to stop washer fluid spray.



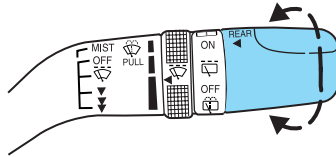
## Driver Controls


### Rear window wiper/washer controls

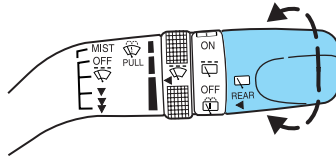
For intermittent operation of rear wiper, rotate end of control upward to the  position.



For normal speed rear wiper operation, rotate control upward to ON.



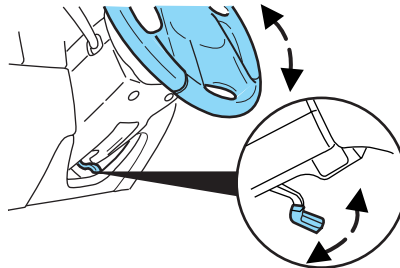
To activate the rear washer, rotate the control to the  position and release.



### TILT STEERING WHEEL

To adjust the steering wheel:

1. Pull down the steering column tilt lever.
2. Move the steering wheel up or down until you find the desired location.
3. Push the steering column tilt lever up. This will lock the steering wheel in position.

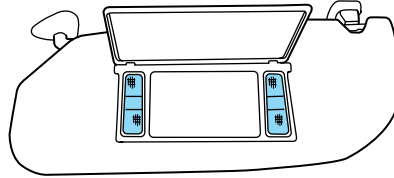


Never adjust the steering wheel when the vehicle is moving.

## Driver Controls

### ILLUMINATED VISOR MIRROR (IF EQUIPPED)

Lift the mirror cover to turn on the visor mirror lamps.



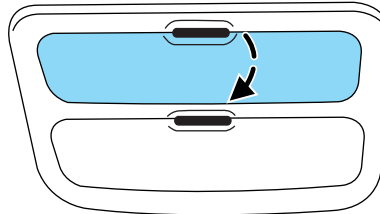
### OVERHEAD CONSOLE (IF EQUIPPED)

The appearance of your vehicle's overhead console will vary according to your option package.

#### Storage compartment (if equipped)

Press the release on the door to open the storage compartment.

The storage compartment may be used to secure sunglasses or a similar object.



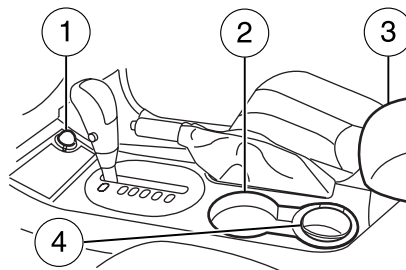
### CENTER CONSOLE

Your vehicle is equipped with a variety of console features. These include:

1. Power point
2. Cupholders
3. Utility compartment
4. Ash cup (if equipped)



Use only soft cups in the cupholders. Hard objects can injure you in a collision.



## Driver Controls

### AUXILIARY POWER POINT (12VDC)

**Power outlets are designed for accessory plugs only. Do not insert any other object in the power outlet as this will damage the outlet and blow the fuse. Do not hang any type of accessory or accessory bracket from the plug. Improper use of the power outlet can cause damage not covered by your warranty.**

The auxiliary power point is located in the floor console. Cigarette lighter (if equipped) is located in the instrument panel.

Do not use the power point for operating the cigarette lighter element (if equipped).

To prevent the fuse from being blown, do not use the power point(s) over the vehicle capacity of 12 VDC/180W.

To prevent the battery from being discharged, do not use the power point longer than necessary when the engine is not running.

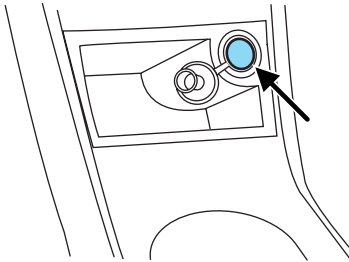
Always keep the power point caps closed when not being used.

### Cigar/Cigarette lighter (if equipped)

Do not plug optional electrical accessories into the cigarette lighter socket.

Do not hold the lighter in with your hand while it is heating, this will damage the lighter element and socket. The lighter will be released from its heating position when it is ready to be used.

Improper use of the lighter can cause damage not covered by your warranty.



### POWER WINDOWS



Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle and do not let children play with the power windows. They may seriously injure themselves.



When closing the power windows, you should verify they are free of obstructions and ensure that children and/or pets are not in the proximity of the window openings.

## Driver Controls

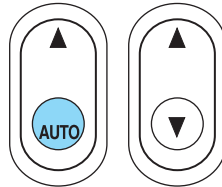
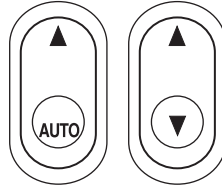
Press and hold the bottom part of the rocker switch to open the window. Press and hold the top part of the rocker switch to close the window.

**Note:** The window switches will not illuminate when the window lock control is in the LOCKED position.

**Rear Window Buffeting:** When one or both of the rear windows are open, the vehicle may demonstrate a wind throb or buffeting noise; this noise can be eliminated by lowering a front window approximately two to three inches.

### One touch down

Allows the driver's window to open fully without holding the control down. Press completely down on AUTO and release quickly. Press the top part of the switch to stop.



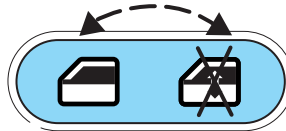
### Window lock (if equipped)

The window lock feature disables all the power windows except the driver's.

To lock out all the window controls except for the driver's window press the right side of the control.

**Note:** The passenger window switches will not illuminate when the window control is in the LOCKED position.

Press the left side to restore the window controls.



### Accessory delay

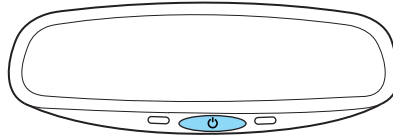
With accessory delay, the window switches, moon roof (if equipped) and audio system may be used for up to ten minutes after the ignition switch is turned to the OFF position or until either front door is opened.



## Driver Controls

### AUTOMATIC DIMMING REAR VIEW MIRROR (IF EQUIPPED)

Your vehicle may be equipped with an inside rear view mirror with an auto-dimming function. The electrochromic day/night mirror will change from the normal (high reflective) state to the non-glare (darkened) state when bright lights (glare) reach the mirror. When the mirror detects bright light from behind the vehicle, it will automatically adjust (darken) to minimize glare.



The mirror will automatically return to the normal state whenever the vehicle is placed in R (Reverse) to ensure a bright clear view when backing up.

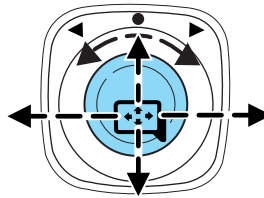
Do not block the sensor on the backside of the inside rear view mirror since this may impair proper mirror performance.

### EXTERIOR MIRRORS

#### Power side view mirrors

To adjust your mirrors:

1. Rotate the control, located on the instrument panel left of the steering wheel, clockwise to adjust the right mirror and rotate the control counterclockwise to adjust the left mirror.



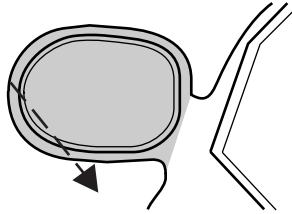
2. Move the control in the direction you wish to tilt the mirror.

3. Return to the center position to lock mirrors in place.

## Driver Controls

### Fold-away mirrors

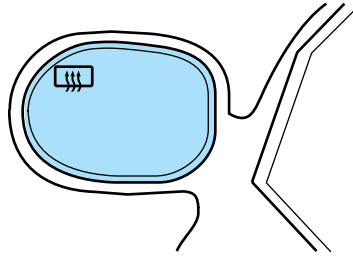
Carefully pull the outside mirrors inwards when driving through a narrow space, like an automatic car wash.



### Heated outside mirrors (if equipped)

Both mirrors are heated automatically to remove ice, mist and fog when the rear window defrost is activated.

**Do not remove ice from the mirrors with a scraper or attempt to readjust the mirror glass if it is frozen in place. These actions could cause damage to the glass and mirrors.**



### SPEED CONTROL (IF EQUIPPED)

With speed control set, you can maintain a speed of 30 mph (48 km/h) or more without keeping your foot on the accelerator pedal. Speed control does not work at speeds below 30 mph (48 km/h).

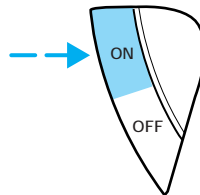


Do not use the speed control in heavy traffic or on roads that are winding, slippery or unpaved.


### Setting speed control

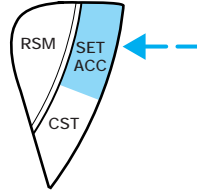
The controls for using your speed control are located on the steering wheel for your convenience.

1. Press the ON control and release it.
2. Accelerate to the desired speed.



## Driver Controls

3. Press the SET ACC control and release it.
4. Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.
5. The indicator  light on the instrument cluster will turn on.

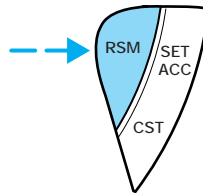


### Note:

- Vehicle speed may vary momentarily when driving up and down a steep hill.
- If the vehicle speed increases above the set speed on a downhill, you may want to apply the brakes to reduce the speed.
- If the vehicle speed decreases more than 10 mph (16 km/h) below your set speed on an uphill, your speed control will disengage.

### Resuming a set speed

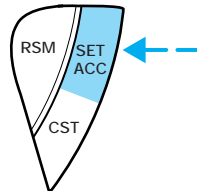
Press the RSM control and release it. This will automatically return the vehicle to the previously set speed. The RSM control will not work if the vehicle speed is not faster than 30 mph (48 km/h).



### Increasing speed while using speed control

There are two ways to set a higher speed:

- Press and hold the SET ACC control until you get to the desired speed, then release the control. You can also use the SET ACC control to operate the Tap-Up function. Press and release this control to increase the vehicle set speed in small amounts by 1 mph (1.6 km/h).
- Use the accelerator pedal to get to the desired speed. When the vehicle reaches that speed press and release the SET ACC control.

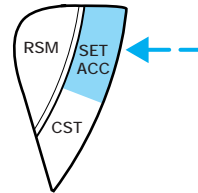
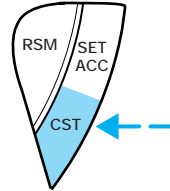


## Driver Controls

### Reducing speed while using speed control

There are two ways to reduce a set speed:

- Press and hold the CST control until you get to the desired speed, then release the control. You can also use the CST control to operate the Tap-Down function. Press and release this control to decrease the vehicle set speed in small amounts by 1 mph (1.6 km/h).
- Depress the brake pedal until the desired vehicle speed is reached, press the SET ACC control.

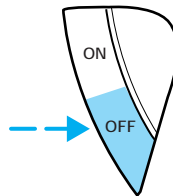


### Turning off speed control

There are two ways to turn off the speed control:

- Depress the brake pedal or the clutch pedal (if equipped). This will not erase your vehicle's previously set speed.
- Press the speed control OFF control.

**Note:** When you turn off the speed control or the ignition, your speed control set speed memory is erased.

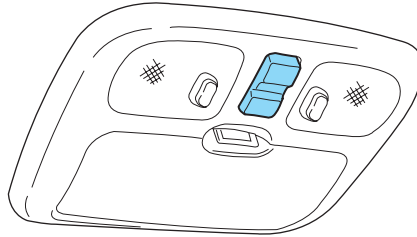


## Driver Controls

### MOON ROOF (IF EQUIPPED)

To operate the moon roof:

**Note:** The moon roof will open to the “**comfort**” position first before opening all the way. The “comfort” position helps to alleviate rumbling wind noise which may happen in the vehicle with the roof fully opened.



- The moon roof is equipped with an automatic, one-touch, express opening feature. Press and release the rear portion of the control. The moon roof will open to the “comfort” position. Press and release the control again to fully open. To stop motion at any time during the one-touch opening, press the control again.
- To close, press and hold the front portion of the control.

To operate the moon roof vent position:

- To open, press and hold the front portion of the control. This will open the vent.
- To close, press and hold the rear portion of the control.

**Note:** If the battery is disconnected, discharged, or a new battery is installed, the moon roof needs to be opened to the vent position to reset the moon roof positions.

If you open and close the moon roof repeatedly, the moon roof motor may overheat and shut down for 45 seconds while the motor cools.



Do not let children play with the moon roof or leave children unattended in the vehicle. They may seriously hurt themselves.



When closing the moon roof, you should verify that it is free of obstructions and ensure that children and/or pets are not in the proximity of the moon roof opening.

## Driver Controls

### MESSAGE CENTER (IF EQUIPPED)

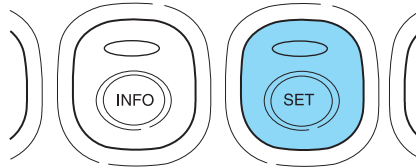
With the ignition in the ON position, the message center, located on your instrument cluster, displays important vehicle information **through a constant monitor of vehicle systems.** You may select display features on the message center for a display of status preceded by a brief indicator chime. The system will also notify you of potential vehicle problems with a display of system warnings followed by a long indicator chime.

XXXXXXXXXXXXXX  
XXXXXXXXXXXXXX

### Selectable features

#### Set

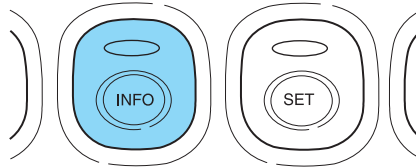
This button is used to select and reset various functions shown in the INFO Menu.



#### Info menu

This control displays the following control displays:

- Average Fuel Economy
- Distance to Empty
- Instantaneous Fuel Economy
- Fuel Available
- System Check
- Units (English/Metric)
- Language
- INFO Display on/off



## Driver Controls

### **Average fuel economy (AFE)**

Select this function from the INFO menu to display your average fuel economy in miles/gallon or liters/100 km.

AVERAGE ECON  
XX.X MPG

If you calculate your average fuel economy by dividing gallons of fuel used by 100 miles traveled (kilometers traveled by liters used), your figure may be different than displayed for the following reasons:

- your vehicle was not perfectly level during fill-up
- differences in the automatic shut-off points on the fuel pumps at service stations
- variations in top-off procedure from one fill-up to another
- rounding of the displayed values to the nearest 0.1 gallon (liter)

1. Drive the vehicle at least 8 km (5 miles) with the speed control system engaged to display a stabilized average.

2. Record the highway fuel economy for future reference.

It is important to press the SET control after setting the speed control to get accurate highway fuel economy readings.

### **Distance to empty (DTE)**

Selecting this function from the INFO menu will give you an estimate of how far you can drive with the fuel remaining in your tank under normal driving conditions.

XXX MILES  
TO EMPTY

Remember to turn the ignition OFF when refueling your vehicle. Otherwise, the display will not show the addition of fuel for a few kilometers (miles).

The DTE function will display “LOW FUEL LEVEL” and sound a tone for one second when you have low fuel level indicated on the fuel gauge.

## Driver Controls

### **Instantaneous fuel economy**

Press INFO until the menu displays "INSTANT ECON". This will display your fuel economy as a Bar Graph ranging from "L" poor economy to "H" excellent economy.

INSTANT ECON  
L ■■■■■■■■ H

Your vehicle must be moving to calculate instantaneous fuel economy. When your vehicle is not moving, this function shows "L", one or no bars illuminated. Instantaneous fuel economy cannot be reset.

### **Fuel available**

Selecting this function from the INFO menu will show you how much fuel is available in your tank.

FUEL AVAIL  
XX LITERS

### **Units (English/Metric)**

1. Select this function from the INFO menu for the current units to be displayed.
2. Press the SET control to change from English to Metric.

UNITS  
> ENG METRIC

### **System check**

Selecting this function from the INFO menu causes the message center to cycle through each of the systems being monitored. For each of the monitored systems, the message center will indicate either an OK message or a warning message for three seconds.

PRESS SET  
FOR SYS CHCK

Pressing the SET control cycles the message center through each of the systems being monitored.



## Driver Controls

The sequence of the system check report is as follows:

1. Oil Change Reminder
2. Charging System
3. Emission Status
4. Brake System
5. Tire Pressure Monitoring System
6. Liftgate Status
7. Exterior Lamps
8. 4 Wheel Drive
9. Fuel Level Status

### **Language**

1. Select this function from the INFO menu for the current language to be displayed.

ENGLISH  
SET FOR NEW

2. Pressing the SET control cycles the message center through each of the language choices.

FOR ENGLISH  
HOLD SET

3. Press and hold the SET control for 2 seconds to set the language choice.

SET TO  
ENGLISH

### **Display Off**

Select this function from the INFO control to turn your message center display OFF.

## Driver Controls

### System warnings

System warnings alert you to possible problems or malfunctions in your vehicle's operating systems.

In the event of a multiple warning situation, the message center will cycle the display to show all warnings by displaying each one for four seconds.

The message center will display the last selected feature if there are no more warning messages. This allows you to use the full functionality of the message center after you acknowledge the warning by pressing the SET control and clearing the warning message.

Warning messages that have been reset are divided into two categories:

- They will reappear on the display ten minutes from the reset.
- They will not reappear until an ignition OFF-ON cycle has been completed.

This acts as a reminder that these warning conditions still exist within the vehicle.

Warnings	Status
High engine temperature	Warning cannot be reset
Driver door ajar	
Passenger door ajar	
Rear left door ajar	
Rear right door ajar	
Park brake on	Warning returns after 10 minutes

## Driver Controls

Warnings	Status
Liftgate ajar	Warning returns after the ignition key is turned from OFF to ON.
Service emission sys	
Check fuel cap	
Low brake fluid	
Low tire pressure	
Tire pressure monitor fault	
Tire pressure sensor fault	
Service brake system	
Check left headlamp	
Check right headlamp	
Check left high beam	
Check right high beam	
Check left turn lamps	
Check right turn lamps	
Engine change oil soon	
Engine oil change now	
Low fuel	
Service 4WD	
Turn signal on	
4WD locked temporarily (if equipped)	Temporary alert
4WD disabled temporarily (if equipped)	
4WD auto restored (if equipped)	

**HIGH ENGINE TEMPERATURE.** Displayed when the engine is overheating. Stop the vehicle as soon as safely possible, turn off the engine and let it cool. Check the coolant and coolant level. Refer to *Engine coolant* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.



Never remove the coolant reservoir cap while the engine is running or hot.

## Driver Controls

**DRIVER DOOR AJAR.** Displayed when the driver door is not completely closed.

**PASSENGER DOOR AJAR.** Displayed when the passenger door is not completely closed.

**REAR LEFT DOOR AJAR.** Displayed when the rear left door is not completely closed.

**REAR RIGHT DOOR AJAR.** Displayed when the rear right door is not completely closed.

**LIFTGATE AJAR.** Displayed when the liftgate or liftgate glass is not completely closed. Press SET to reset display.

**PARK BRAKE ON.** Displayed when the park brake is on. If the warning stays on after the park brake is off, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

**CHECK FUEL CAP.** Displayed when the fuel filler cap is not properly installed. Check the fuel filler cap for proper installation. Refer to *Fuel filler cap* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter.

**SERVICE EMISSION SYS.** Displayed when the engine has defaulted to a 'limp-home' operation. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

**LOW TIRE PRESSURE.** Displayed when one or more tires on your vehicle have low tire pressure. Refer to *Inflating Your Tires* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter.

**TIRE PRESSURE MONITOR FAULT.** Displayed when the Tire Pressure Monitoring System is malfunctioning. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, have the system inspected by your authorized dealer.

**TIRE PRESSURE SENSOR FAULT.** Displayed when a tire pressure sensor is malfunctioning, or your spare tire is in use. For more information on how the system operates under these conditions, refer to *Understanding Your Tire Pressure Monitoring System* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, have the system inspected by your authorized dealer.

**SERVICE BRAKE SYSTEM.** Displayed when the braking system is not operating properly. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

**CHECK LEFT OR RIGHT HEADLAMPS.** Displayed when the headlamps are activated and at least one is burned out. Check the lamps as soon as possible and have the burned out lamp replaced. Refer to *Replacing headlamp bulbs* in the *Lights* chapter.

## Driver Controls

**CHECK LEFT OR RIGHT HIGH BEAMS.** Displayed when the headlamps are activated and at least one is burned out. Check the lamps as soon as possible and have the burned out lamp replaced. Refer to *Replacing headlamp bulbs* in the *Lights* chapter.

**CHECK LEFT OR RIGHT TURN LAMPS.** Displayed when the turn signals are activated and at least one is burned out. Check the lamps as soon as safely possible and have the burned out lamp replaced.

**LOW FUEL.** Displayed as an early reminder of a low fuel condition.

**SERVICE 4WD.** Displayed when the 4X4 is not operating properly. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

**TURN SIGNAL ON.** Displayed when the turn signal is activated and the vehicle is driven more than 2 miles (3.3 km).

**4WD LOCKED TEMPORARILY (if equipped).** Displayed when the 4X4 is temporarily locked. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

**4WD DISABLED TEMPORARILY (if equipped).** Displayed when the 4X4 is temporarily disabled. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

**4WD AUTO RESTORED (if equipped).** Displayed when the 4X4 is restored to normal operations.

**ENGINE OIL CHANGE SOON/ENGINE OIL CHANGE NOW.**

Displayed when the engine oil life remaining is 5% or less. When oil life left is between 5% and 0%, the ENGINE OIL CHANGE SOON message will be displayed. When oil life left reaches 0%, the ENGINE OIL CHANGE NOW message will be displayed.

An oil change is required whenever indicated by the message center. USE ONLY RECOMMENDED ENGINE OILS.

To reset the oil monitoring system to 100% after each oil change [approximately 5,000 miles (8,000 km) or 12 months] perform the following:

1. Select this function from the INFO menu then press the SET control to access the system check function.

PRESS SET  
FOR SYS CHCK

## Driver Controls

2. Press and release the SET control to display "OIL CHNG XXX% HOLD SET NEW".

OIL CHNG XXX%  
HOLD SET NEW

3. Press and hold the SET control for 2 seconds to display "OIL CHANGE SET TO 100%".

OIL CHANGE  
SET TO 100%

**INFO UNAVAIL.** These messages indicate improper operation of the vehicle network communication systems for the following vehicle modules.

- Fuel computer
- Charging system
- Door sensor
- Brakes
- Exterior lamps
- Emissions system
- 4WD info

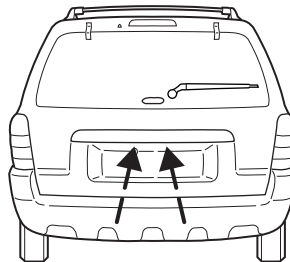
Contact your Ford Dealer as soon as possible if these messages occur on a regular basis.

### LIFTGATE

To open the rear window, pull the right side of the liftgate handle.


To open the liftgate, pull the left side of the liftgate handle.

- Do not open the liftgate or liftgate glass in a garage or other enclosed area with a low ceiling. If the liftgate glass is raised and the liftgate is also opened, both liftgate and glass could be damaged against a low ceiling.



## Driver Controls

- Do not leave the liftgate or liftgate glass open while driving. Doing so could cause serious damage to the liftgate and its components as well as allowing carbon monoxide to enter the vehicle.

 Make sure that the liftgate door and/or window are closed to prevent exhaust fumes from being drawn into the vehicle. Exhaust fumes contain carbon monoxide which can injure your lungs and cause drowsiness and even death. This will also prevent passengers and cargo from falling out. If you must drive with the liftgate door or window open, keep the vents open so outside air comes into the vehicle.

### CARGO SHADE (IF EQUIPPED)

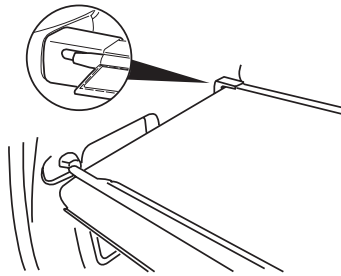
If your vehicle has a cargo shade, you can use it to cover items in the cargo area of your vehicle.


To install the shade:


- Insert the ends of the cargo shade into the mounting features located behind the rear seat on the rear trim panels.

To operate the shade:

1. Grasp the handle at the rear edge of the shade and pull rearward.
2. Secure both ends of the support rod into the retention slots located on the rear quarter trim panels.



 Ensure that the posts are properly latched in mounting features. The cover may cause injury in a sudden stop or accident if it is not securely installed.

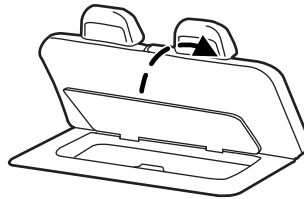
 Do not place any objects on the cargo area shade. They may obstruct your vision or strike occupants of vehicle in the case of a sudden stop or collision.

## Driver Controls

### Cargo management system (if equipped)

The cargo management system consists of a storage compartment located in the floor of the rear cargo area.

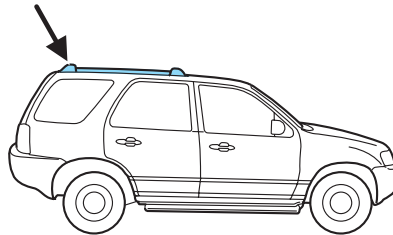
1. To open, lift the release handle and the lid. The lid can be removed to allow for extra storage.
2. To close, lower the lid and push handle until latch clicks.



This storage compartment is not designed to restrain objects during a collision with the lid removed.

### LUGGAGE RACK

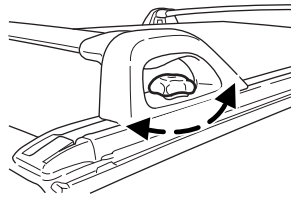
Your vehicle may be equipped with a roof rack. The maximum load for the roof rack is 100 lbs (44 kg), evenly distributed on the cross-bars. If it is not possible to evenly distribute the load, position it in the center or as far forward on the cross-bars as possible.



**Do not use the vehicle's door handles as tie down loops.**

#### ***To adjust the cross-bar (if equipped) position:***

1. Loosen the thumbwheel at both ends of the cross-bar (both cross-bars are adjustable).
2. Slide the cross-bar to the desired location.
3. Tighten the thumbwheel at both ends of the cross-bar.

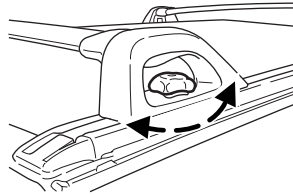




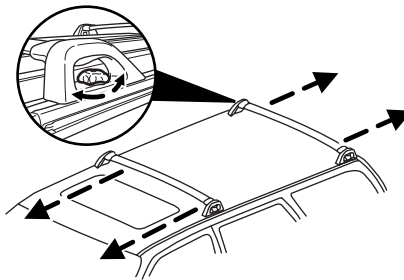
## Driver Controls

### ***To remove the cross-bar assembly (if equipped) from the roof rack side rails:***

1. Loosen the thumbwheel at both ends of the cross-bar (both cross-bars are adjustable).

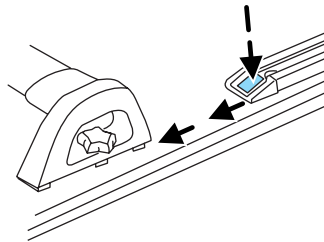


2. Slide the cross-bar to the end of the rail.



3. Use a long, flat object to depress the tongue in the endcaps on both sides of the cross-bar.

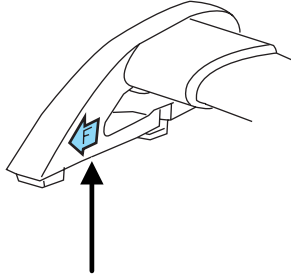
4. Slide the cross-bar assembly off the end of the rail.



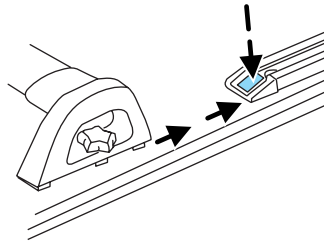
## Driver Controls

**To reinstall the cross-bar assembly (if equipped) to the roof rack side rails:**

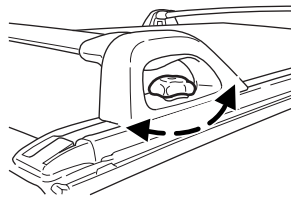
1. Ensure that both cross-bar assemblies are installed with the F (front) arrow facing towards the front of the vehicle.



2. Use a long, flat object to depress the tongue in the endcaps on both sides of the cross-bar.



3. Slide the cross-bar assemblies over the end cap tongue and into the side rails.



4. Tighten thumbwheel at both ends of the cross-bar.

## Locks and Security



### KEYS

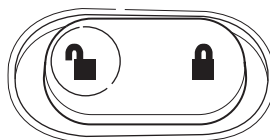
One key operates all the locks and starts the vehicle. Always carry a spare key with you in case of an emergency.

Your keys are programmed to your vehicle; using a non-programmed key will not permit your vehicle to start. If you lose your authorized dealer supplied keys, replacement keys are available through your authorized dealer. Refer to the *SecuriLock<sup>™</sup> passive anti-theft system* section later in this chapter for more information.


### POWER DOOR LOCKS

The power door lock controls are located on the driver and front passenger door panels.

Pressing the  will unlock all the doors. Pressing the  will lock all the doors.



### Power door lock/unlock inhibit feature

As a theft deterrent, the power door lock controls can be disabled 20 seconds after the ignition has been turned to the 1 (LOCK) position and the vehicle is locked using the remote entry transmitter or the key in the door lock cylinder. The door lock controls are enabled when the vehicle is unlocked using the key in the door lock cylinder or by pressing  on the remote entry transmitter. This feature can be turned on or off using the following procedure:

Before starting, ensure the ignition is in the 1 (LOCK) position and all vehicle doors are closed. You must complete Steps 1–5 within 30 seconds or the procedure will have to be repeated.

1. Place the key in the ignition and turn the ignition to the 3 (RUN) position.
2. Press the power door unlock control on the door panel three times.
3. Turn the ignition from the 3 (RUN) position to the 1 (LOCK) position.
4. Press the power door unlock control on the door panel three times.
5. Turn the ignition back to the 3 (RUN) position. The horn will chirp one time to confirm programming mode has been entered and is active.
6. Press the power door lock control on the door panel two times within five seconds. The horn will chirp two times to confirm the feature is off; the horn will chirp two times and honk one time to confirm the feature is on.

## Locks and Security

7. Turn the ignition from the 3 (RUN) position to the 1 (LOCK) position. The horn will chirp one time to confirm the programming mode has been exited.

Repeat the procedure to turn the feature on or off.

### Door key unlocking/locking

#### **Two step door unlocking**

1. Turn the key in the door cylinder to unlock the driver's door. **Note:** The interior lamps will illuminate if the control on the overhead lamp is in the DOOR position and the perimeter alarm system (if equipped) will deactivate. For more information, refer to *Illuminated entry* later in this chapter.

2. Turn the key in the door cylinder again within three seconds to unlock the passenger doors, the liftgate and liftgate glass.

#### **One step door unlocking**

If the one step door unlocking feature is activated, turn the key in the door cylinder once to unlock all of the doors, the liftgate and liftgate glass. **Note:** The interior lamps will illuminate (refer to the *Illuminated entry* feature later in this section), if the control on the overhead lamp is in the DOOR position. For information on switching from two step to one step door unlocking, refer to *Switching from two step to one step door unlocking* later in this chapter.

#### **Locking the doors**

Turn the key in the door cylinder to lock all the doors. The park/turn lamps will flash once and the perimeter alarm (if equipped) will start the arming process. For more information concerning the perimeter alarm, refer to *Perimeter alarm system (if equipped)* later in this chapter.

If any of the doors, the liftgate or the hood are not properly closed the park/turn lamps will not flash.

#### **Autolock (if equipped)**

The autolock feature automatically locks all vehicle doors when:

- all doors are closed,
- the ignition is in the 3 (RUN) position,
- the brake has been released and
- the vehicle has been set in motion.

## Locks and Security

### **Relock**

This feature will also automatically relock all the doors when:

- the ignition is in the 3 (RUN) position and any door is opened then closed, and
- you put the vehicle in motion by releasing the brake pedal.

### **Deactivating/activating the autolock feature**

The autolock feature can be turned on or off using the following procedure:

Before starting, make sure the ignition is in the 1 (LOCK) position and all vehicle doors are closed.

You must complete Steps 1-5 within 30 seconds or the procedure will have to be repeated.

1. Turn the ignition to the 3 (RUN) position.
2. Press the power door unlock control (on the door panel) three times.
3. Turn the ignition from the 3 (RUN) position to the 1 (LOCK) position.
4. Press the power door unlock control three times.
5. Turn the ignition from the 1 (LOCK) position to the 3 (RUN) position.
6. The horn will chirp once to confirm programming mode is entered/active.
7. Press the power door unlock control on the door panel one time.
8. Press the power door lock control on the door panel one time. **Note:** The horn will chirp once to confirm the feature is OFF, or the horn will chirp and then honk to confirm the feature is ON.
9. Turn the ignition to the 1 (LOCK) position. **Note:** The horn will chirp once to confirm the programming mode has been exited.

Repeat the previous procedure to turn the feature on or off.

### **Smart unlocking feature**

The smart unlocking feature helps prevent you from locking yourself out of the vehicle. With the key in any ignition position, the driver's door will automatically unlock if it is locked using the power lock control on the driver's door panel while the driver's door is open.

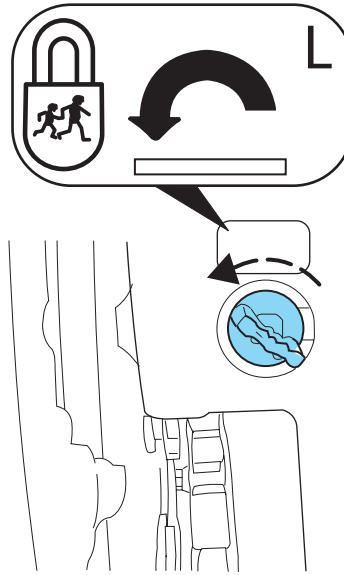
## Locks and Security

### CHILDPROOF DOOR LOCKS

- When these locks are set, the rear doors cannot be opened from the inside.
- The rear doors can be opened from the outside when the doors are unlocked.

The childproof locks are located on rear edge of each rear door and must be set **separately** for each door. Setting the lock for one door will **not** automatically set the lock for both doors.

- Rotate lock control in the direction of arrow to engage the lock.
- Rotate control in the opposite direction to disengage childproof locks.



### REMOTE ENTRY SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC rules and with RS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

**Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.**

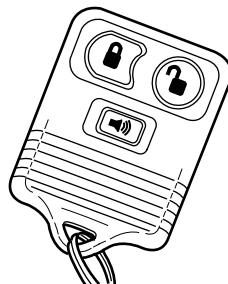
The typical operating range for your remote entry transmitter is approximately 33 feet (10 meters). A decrease in operating range could be caused by:

- weather conditions,
- nearby radio towers,
- structures around the vehicle,
- other vehicles parked next to your vehicle, or

## Locks and Security



- weak or dead transmitter battery.

The remote entry system allows you to lock or unlock all vehicle doors without a key. The remote locking and unlocking features will operate independent of the ignition position; however, the panic feature will only operate when the ignition is in the 1 (LOCK) or 2 (ACCESSORY) position.




If there are problems with the remote entry system, make sure to take **ALL remote entry transmitters** with you to the authorized dealer in order to aid in troubleshooting the problem.

### Two step door unlocking<sup>Ⓐ</sup>



1. Press  and release to unlock the driver's door. **Note:** The interior lamps will illuminate if the control on the overhead lamp is in the DOOR position and the perimeter alarm system (if equipped) will deactivate.
2. Press  and release again within three seconds to unlock the passenger doors, the liftgate and liftgate glass.

The battery saver feature will turn off the interior lamps 30 minutes after the ignition is turned to the 1 (OFF/LOCK) position.

### One step door unlocking


If the one step door unlocking feature is activated, press  and release once to unlock all of the doors, the liftgate and liftgate glass. **Note:** The interior lamps will illuminate (refer to the *Illuminated entry* feature later in this section), if the control on the overhead lamp is in the DOOR position and the perimeter alarm system (if equipped) will deactivate.


### Switching from two step to one step door unlocking


Unlocking can be switched between two step and one step door unlocking by pressing and holding both  and  buttons simultaneously on the remote entry transmitter for approximately 4 seconds. The parklamps will flash twice to indicate that the vehicle has switched to one step unlocking. Repeat the procedure to switch back to two step unlocking.

## Locks and Security


### Locking the doors

1. Press  and release to lock all the doors. Assuming all vehicle doors and the liftgate are properly closed, the park/turn lamps will flash once and the perimeter alarm (if equipped) will start the arming process. For more information concerning the perimeter alarm, refer to *Perimeter alarm system (if equipped)* later in this chapter.

2. Press  and release again within three seconds to confirm that all the doors and liftgate are closed and locked. **Note:** The doors will lock again and the horn will chirp once.

If any of the doors or the hood are not properly closed, the horn will chirp twice and park/turn lamps will not flash when the  control is pressed.

### Sounding a panic alarm

Press  to activate the alarm. To deactivate the feature, press the control again, turn the ignition to the 3 (RUN) or 4 (START) position, or wait for the alarm to time out in approximately 3 minutes.

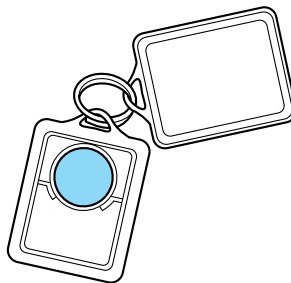
**Note:** The panic alarm will only operate when the ignition is in the 1 (LOCK) or 2 (ACCESSORY) position.

### Replacing the battery

The remote entry transmitter uses one coin type three-volt lithium battery CR2032 or equivalent.

To replace the battery:

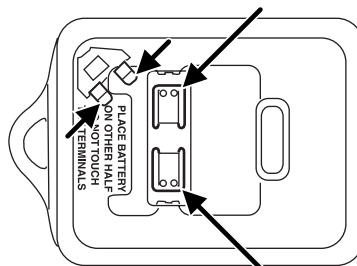
1. Twist a thin coin between the two halves of the remote entry transmitter near the key ring. DO NOT TAKE THE RUBBER COVER AND CIRCUIT BOARD OFF THE FRONT HOUSING OF THE REMOTE ENTRY TRANSMITTER.





## Locks and Security

2. Do not wipe off any grease on the battery terminals on the back surface of the circuit board.



3. Remove the old battery. **Note:** Please refer to local regulations when disposing of transmitter batteries.

4. Insert the new battery. Refer to the diagram inside the remote entry transmitter for the correct orientation of the battery. Press the battery down to ensure that the battery is fully seated in the battery housing cavity.

5. Snap the two halves back together.

**Note:** Replacement of the battery will **not** cause the remote transmitter to become deprogrammed from your vehicle. The remote transmitter should operate normally after battery replacement.

### Replacing lost remote entry transmitters

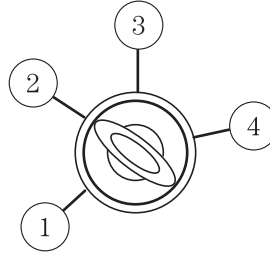
If you would like to have your remote entry transmitter reprogrammed because you lost one, or would like to buy additional remote entry transmitters, you can either reprogram them yourself, or take **all remote entry transmitters** to your authorized dealer for reprogramming.

### How to reprogram your remote entry transmitters

You must have **all remote entry transmitters** (maximum of four) available before beginning this procedure. **Note:** If all remote entry transmitters are not present during the programming procedure, the missing transmitters will not work with the vehicle following programming.

## Locks and Security

To reprogram the remote entry transmitters:



1. Ensure the vehicle is electronically unlocked.
2. Put the key in the ignition.
3. Turn the key from the 1 (LOCK) position to 3 (RUN).
4. Cycle eight times rapidly (within 10 seconds) between the 1 (LOCK) position and 3 (RUN). **Note:** The eighth turn must end in the 3 (RUN) position.
5. The doors will lock, then unlock, to confirm that the programming mode has been activated.
6. Within 20 seconds press any button on the remote entry transmitter. **Note:** If more than 20 seconds have passed you will need to start the procedure over again.
7. The doors will lock, then unlock, to confirm that this remote entry transmitter has been programmed.
8. Repeat Step 6 to program each additional remote entry transmitter.
9. Turn the ignition to the 1 (LOCK) position after you have finished programming all of the remote entry transmitters.
10. The doors will lock, then unlock, to confirm that the programming mode has been exited.

### Illuminated entry

The interior lamps illuminate when the remote entry system is used to unlock the door(s).

The illuminated entry system will turn off the interior lights if:

- the ignition switch is turned to the 2 (ACCESSORY) position, or
- the remote transmitter lock control is pressed, or
- the doors are locked by key in the door cylinder, or

## Locks and Security

- after 25 seconds of illumination.

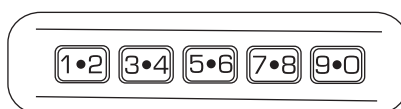
### Illuminated exit

- The interior lights will illuminate when the key is removed from the ignition.

The lamps automatically turn off after 25 seconds. The dome and cargo lamp controls must **not** be set to the OFF position for the illuminated exit system to operate.

### KEYLESS ENTRY SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

You can use the keyless entry keypad to lock or unlock the doors without using a key.




The keypad can be operated with the factory set 5-digit entry code; this code is located on the owner's wallet card in the glove box and is available from your authorized dealer. You can also create your own 5-digit personal entry code.

When pressing the controls on the keypad, press the middle of the controls to ensure a good activation.

### Anti-scan feature

If an incorrect code has been entered 7 times (35 consecutive button presses), the keypad will go into an anti-scan mode. This mode disables the keypad for one minute and the keypad lamp will flash during this time.

The anti-scan feature will turn off after:

- one minute of keypad inactivity.
- pressing the  control on the remote entry transmitter.
- the ignition is turned to the 3 (RUN) position.

### Programming a personal entry code

To create your own personal entry code:

1. Enter the factory set code. **Note:** The keyless entry keypad and interior lights will illuminate and the driver's door will unlock.
2. Within five seconds press the 1 • 2 on the keypad.
3. Enter your personal 5-digit code. Each number must be entered within five seconds of each other.

## Locks and Security

4. The doors will again lock then unlock, to confirm that your personal keycode has been programmed to the module.

### Tips:

- Do not set a code that uses five of the same number.
- Do not use five numbers in sequential order.
- The factory set code will work even if you have set your own personal code.
- If you set a second personal code it will erase your first personal code.

**Note:** To exit programming mode, either wait 5 seconds after pressing 1 • 2 on the keypad, or press the 7 • 8 and 9 • 0 pads simultaneously to lock all vehicle doors and end programming mode.

### Erasing personal codes

1. Enter the factory set 5-digit code. The keyless entry keypad and interior lights will illuminate and the driver's door will unlock.
2. Press and release the 1 • 2 within five seconds of completing Step 1.
3. Press and hold the 1 • 2 for two seconds to erase the customer programmed codes.

All personal codes are now erased and only the factory set 5-digit code will work.

**Note:** To exit programming mode, either wait 5 seconds after pressing 1 • 2 on the keypad, or press the 7 • 8 and 9 • 0 pads simultaneously to lock all vehicle doors and end programming mode.

### Unlocking and locking the doors using keyless entry

**To unlock the driver's door,** enter the factory set 5-digit code or your personal code. Each number must be pressed within five seconds of each other. The interior lamps will illuminate.

**To unlock all doors and the liftgate,** enter the factory set code or your personal code, then press the 3 • 4 control within five seconds.

**To lock all doors,** press the 7 • 8 and the 9 • 0 at the same time. You **do not** need to enter the keypad code first.

### SECURILOCK™ PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM

SecuriLock™ passive anti-theft system is an engine immobilization system. This system is designed to help prevent the engine from being started unless a **coded key programmed to your vehicle** is used. The use of the wrong type of coded key may lead to a "no-start" condition.

## Locks and Security

Your vehicle comes with two coded keys; additional coded keys may be purchased from your authorized dealer. The authorized dealer can program your spare keys to your vehicle or you can program the keys yourself. Refer to *Programming spare keys* for instructions on how to program the coded key.

**Note:** The SecuriLock<sup>™</sup> passive anti-theft system is not compatible with non-Ford aftermarket remote start systems. Use of these systems may result in vehicle starting problems and a loss of security protection.

**Note:** Large metallic objects, electronic devices that are used to purchase gasoline or similar items, or a second coded key on the same key chain may cause vehicle starting issues. You need to prevent these objects from touching the coded key while starting the engine. These objects will not cause damage to the coded key, but may cause a momentary issue if they are too close to the key when starting the engine. If a problem occurs, turn the ignition off, remove all objects on the key chain away from the coded key and restart the engine.

### Anti-theft indicator

The anti-theft indicator is located in the instrument cluster.



- When the ignition is in the 1 (LOCK) position, the anti-theft indicator will flash once every 2 seconds to indicate the SecuriLock<sup>™</sup> system is functioning as a theft deterrent.
- When the ignition is in the 3 (RUN) position, the anti-theft indicator will glow for 3 seconds, then turn off to indicate normal system functionality.

If a problem occurs with the SecuriLock<sup>™</sup> system, the indicator will flash rapidly or glow steadily when the ignition is in the 3 (RUN) position. If this occurs, the vehicle should be taken to an authorized dealer for service.

### Replacement keys

If your keys are lost or stolen and you don't have an extra coded key, you will need to have your vehicle towed to an authorized dealer. The key codes need to be erased from your vehicle and new coded keys will need to be programmed.

## Locks and Security

Replacing coded keys can be very costly. Store an extra programmed key away from the vehicle in a safe place to help prevent any inconveniences. Please visit an authorized dealer to purchase additional spare or replacement keys.

### Programming spare keys

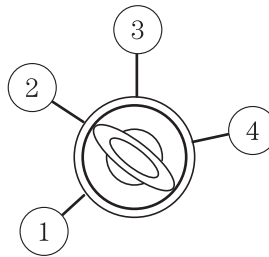
You can program your own coded keys to your vehicle.

#### Tips:

- A maximum of eight keys can be coded to your vehicle.
- Only use SecuriLock<sup>™</sup> keys.
- You must have two previously programmed coded keys (keys that already operate your vehicle's engine) and the new unprogrammed key(s) readily accessible.
- If two previously programmed coded keys are not available, you must take your vehicle to your authorized dealer to have the spare key(s) programmed.

Please read and understand the entire procedure before you begin.

1. Insert the first previously programmed **coded key** into the ignition.



2. Turn the ignition from the 1 (LOCK) position to the 3 (RUN) position. Keep the ignition in the 3 (RUN) position for at least three seconds, but no more than 10 seconds.

3. Turn the ignition to the 1 (LOCK) position and remove the first **coded key** from the ignition.

4. Within ten seconds of turning the ignition to the 1 (LOCK) position, insert the second previously **coded key** into the ignition.

5. Turn the ignition from the 1 (LOCK) position to the 3 (RUN) position. Keep the ignition in the 3 (RUN) position for at least three seconds, but no more than 10 seconds.

6. Turn the ignition to the 1 (LOCK) position and remove the second previously programmed **coded key** from the ignition.

## Locks and Security

7. Within twenty seconds of turning the ignition to the 1 (LOCK) position and removing the previously programmed **coded key**, insert the new unprogrammed key (new key/valet key) into the ignition.

8. Turn the ignition from the 1 (LOCK) position to the 3 (RUN) position. Keep the ignition in the 3 (RUN) position for at least three seconds but not more than 10 seconds.

9. Remove the newly programmed **coded key** from the ignition.

If the key has been successfully programmed it will start the vehicle's engine and the theft indicator light will illuminate for three seconds and then go out.

If the key was not successfully programmed, it will not start your vehicle's engine and the theft indicator light will flash on and off; you may need to repeat Steps 1 through 5. If failure repeats, bring your vehicle to your authorized dealer to have the new key(s) programmed.

To program additional new unprogrammed key(s), wait twenty seconds and then repeat this procedure from Step 1.

### PERIMETER ALARM SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)


The perimeter anti-theft system will warn you in the event of an unauthorized entry to your vehicle.

If there is any potential perimeter anti-theft problem with your vehicle, ensure **ALL remote entry transmitters** are taken to the authorized dealer to aid in troubleshooting.

### Arming the system

When armed, this system will respond if unauthorized entry is attempted. When unauthorized entry occurs, the system will flash the park/turn lamps and will sound the horn.

The system is ready to arm whenever the key is removed from the ignition. Any of the following actions will prearm the alarm system:

- Press the  control on the remote entry transmitter.
- Lock the doors with the key in the key cylinder.
- Open the driver's door and press the power door lock control to lock all the doors, and then close the door.


**Note:** The doors, liftgate and hood will arm individually, and if any of them are open, they must be closed in order to be armed.

## Locks and Security

When you lock the vehicle using any of the methods above:


- the park/turn lamps will flash once to indicate the hood, each door and the liftgate are closed.
- the park/turn lamps will **not** flash if the hood, any door or the liftgate are open. Once all doors, hood and liftgate are closed, the park/turn lamps will flash to confirm the alarm will be set.

When the vehicle is locked, the alarm is set after a 20-second arming period.

When you press the  control on the remote entry transmitter twice within three seconds, the horn will chirp once to confirm the doors, liftgate and hood are closed and locked, and the alarm is set.

### Disarming the system



You can disarm the system by any of the following actions:

- Unlock the doors by pressing the  control on your remote entry transmitter.
- Unlock the doors with a key. Turn the key full travel (toward the front of the vehicle) to ensure the alarm disarms.
- Turning the key in the ignition to the 3 (RUN) or 4 (START) position.  
**Note:** The key must be a valid, programmed, coded key.

### Triggering the anti-theft system

The armed system will be triggered if any door, liftgate or the hood is opened without using the key or the remote entry transmitter.

To deactivate the triggered alarm state:


- Unlock the doors by pressing the  control on your remote entry transmitter.
- Unlock the doors with a key. Turn the key full travel (toward the front of the vehicle) to ensure the alarm disarms.
- Press  on the remote entry transmitter to disable the alarm; the alarm will be disabled, but the vehicle will remain in an armed state.
- Turning the key in the ignition to the 3 (RUN) or 4 (START) position.  
**Note:** The key must be a valid, programmed, coded key.





## Seating and Safety Restraints

### FRONT SEATS

#### Notes:

 Reclining the seatback can cause an occupant to slide under the seat's safety belt, resulting in severe personal injuries in the event of a collision.

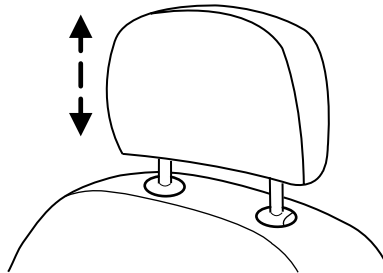
 Do not pile cargo higher than the seatbacks to reduce the risk of injury in a collision or sudden stop.

 Before returning the seatback to its original position, make sure that cargo or any objects are not trapped behind the seatback. After returning the seatback to its original position, pull on the seatback to ensure that it has fully latched. An unlatched seat may become dangerous in the event of a sudden stop or collision.

### Adjustable head restraints

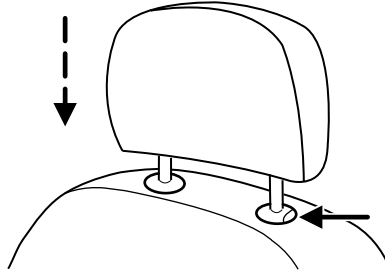
The purpose of these head restraints is to help limit head motion in the event of a rear collision. To properly adjust your head restraints, lift the head restraint so that it is located directly behind your head or as close to that position as possible.

The head restraints can be moved up and down.



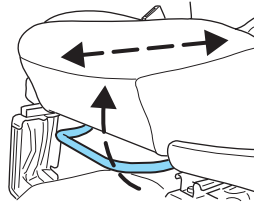
## Seating and Safety Restraints

Push side control and push down on head restraint to lower it.

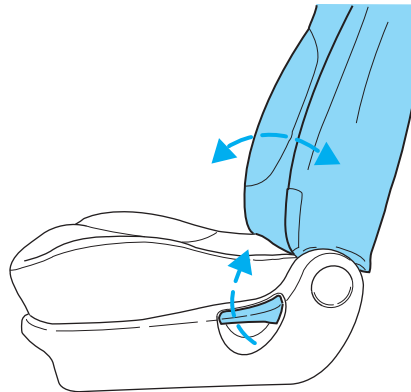


### Adjusting the front manual seat

Lift handle to move seat forward or backward.



Pull lever up to adjust seatback.



### Adjusting the front power seat (if equipped)



Never adjust the driver's seat or seatback when the vehicle is moving.

## Seating and Safety Restraints



Do not pile cargo higher than the seatbacks to avoid injuring people in a collision or sudden stop.



Always drive and ride with your seatback upright and the lap belt snug and low across the hips.



Reclining the seatback can cause an occupant to slide under the seat's safety belt, resulting in severe personal injuries in the event of a collision.



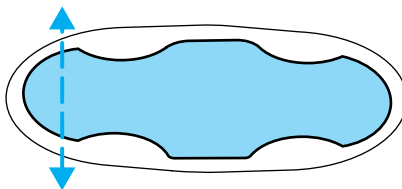
Sitting improperly out of position or with the seat back reclined too far can take off weight from the seat cushion and affect the decision of the passenger sensing system, resulting in serious injury or death in a crash. Always sit upright against your seatback, with your feet on the floor.



To reduce the risk of possible serious injury: Do not hang objects off seat back or stow objects in the seatback map pocket (if equipped) when a child is in the front passenger seat. Do not place objects underneath the front passenger seat or between the seat and the center console (if equipped). Check the "passenger airbag off" or "pass airbag off" indicator lamp for proper airbag status. Refer to *Front passenger sensing system* section for additional details. Failure to follow these instructions may interfere with the front passenger seat sensing system.

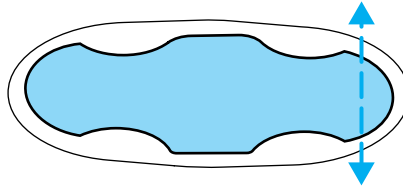
The control is located on the outboard side of the seat cushion.

Press to raise or lower the front portion of the seat cushion.

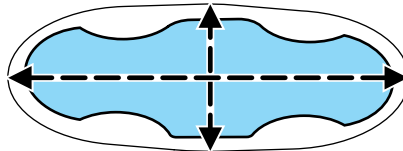


## Seating and Safety Restraints

Press to raise or lower the rear portion of the seat cushion.



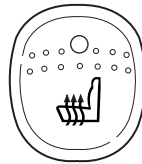
Press the control to move the seat forward, backward, up or down.



### Heated seats (if equipped)

To operate the heated seats:

- Push the control located on the seat to activate.
- Push again to deactivate.



The heated seats will activate when the ignition is in the RUN position.

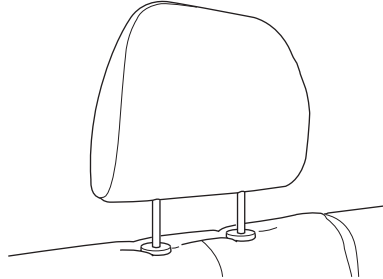
## REAR SEATS

### Head restraints

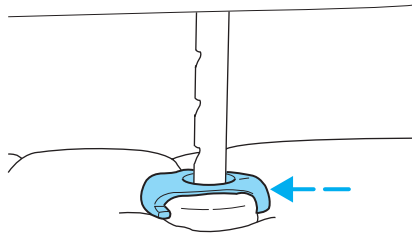
The purpose of these head restraints is to help limit head motion in the event of a rear collision. To properly adjust your head restraints, lift the head restraint so that it is located directly behind your head or as close to that position as possible.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

The head restraints can be moved up and down. Lift the head restraint so that it is located directly or as close as possible behind your head.

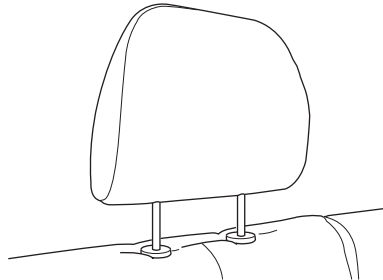


Push control to lower or remove head restraint.

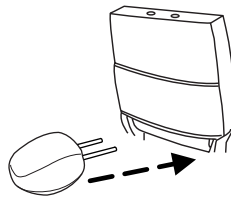


### Folding down rear seats

1. Raise the rear seat head restraint and remove.

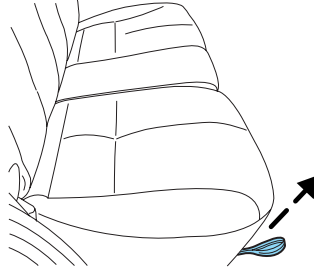


2. Place the head restraint under the front seat for storage.



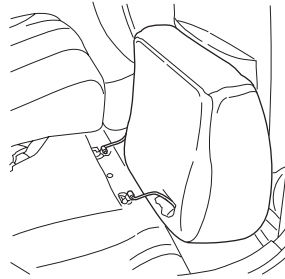
## Seating and Safety Restraints

3. Pull the seat release control.

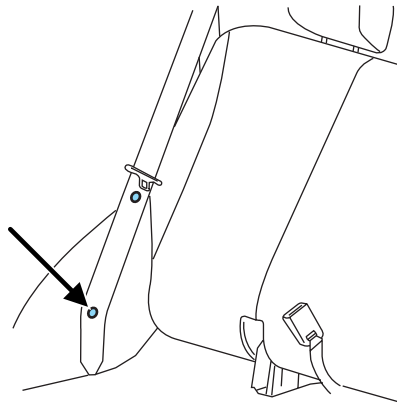


**Note:** Make sure the floor is clear of all objects before folding the seat.

4. Flip seat forward.



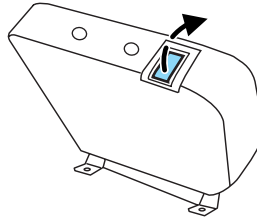
Attach the safety belt web snap button to the quarter trim panel snap button. This will ensure that safety belt does not get caught by staying out of the seat back folding path.



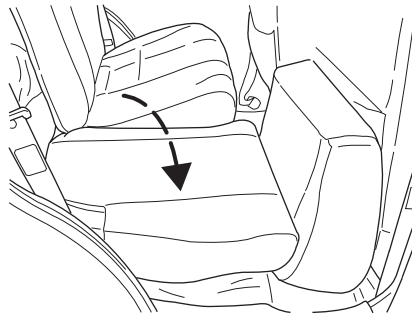
## Seating and Safety Restraints

5. To release seatback, pull the seatback release lever (on top of seat) toward the front seat. This is common for both 60% and 40% seatbacks.

**Note:** When the seatback release lever is pulled, slowly lower seatback to the flat position.

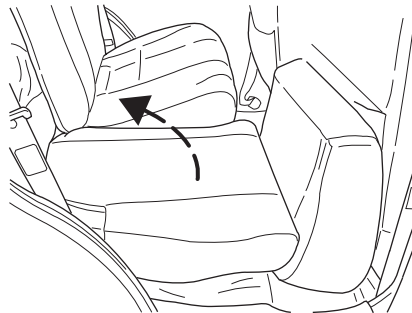


6. Rotate seatback down into load floor position.



### ***Returning the rear seats to upright position***

1. Pull seatback up and into upright position making sure seatback locks into place and the red seat unlatched indicator on release paddle is not visible.

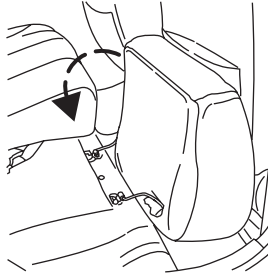


## Seating and Safety Restraints

2. Rotate seat cushion down into the seating position making sure that the seat cushion is locked into place and that the safety belt buckles are exposed.



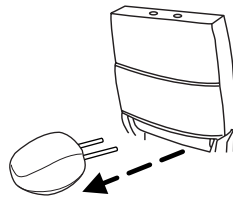
Make sure safety belt buckle heads are through elastic holders on seat backs. Safety belt buckles may break if they are trapped underneath the seatback as the seatback is rotated down.



Before returning the seatback to its original position, make sure that cargo or any objects are not trapped behind the seatback. After returning the seatback to its original position, pull on the seatback to ensure that it has fully latched. An unlatched seat may become dangerous in the event of a sudden stop or collision.

3. Remove the head restraint stored under the front seat and return it to the original position on the seat back.

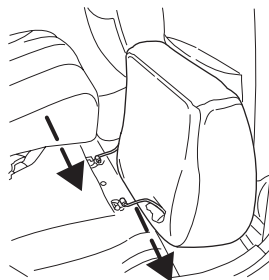
4. Unsnap the safety belt webbing from the quarter trim panel.



### **To remove the rear cushion**

1. Lift the yellow tab to release the hinges.

2. Pull the cushion to the outboard side of the vehicle.

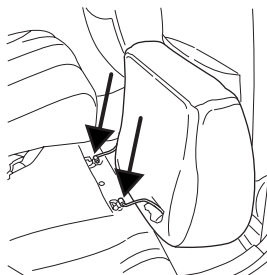




## Seating and Safety Restraints

### **To install the rear cushion**

1. Push the cushion to the inboard side of the vehicle.
2. Make sure that the hinges are locked into place.



## **SAFETY RESTRAINTS**

### **Personal Safety System™**

The Personal Safety System™ provides an improved overall level of frontal crash protection to front seat occupants and is designed to help further reduce the risk of airbag-related injuries. The system is able to analyze different occupant conditions and crash severity before activating the appropriate safety devices to help better protect a range of occupants in a variety of frontal crash situations.

Your vehicle's Personal Safety System™ consists of:

- Driver and passenger dual-stage airbag supplemental restraints.
- Front safety belts with pretensioners, energy management retractors, and safety belt usage sensors.
- Front passenger sensing system
- "Passenger airbag off" or "pass airbag off" indicator lamp
- Front crash severity sensor.
- Restraints Control Module (RCM) with impact and safing sensors.
- Restraint system warning light and back-up tone.
- The electrical wiring for the airbags, crash sensor(s), safety belt pretensioners, front safety belt usage sensors, driver seat position sensor, front passenger sensing system, and indicator lights.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

### ***How does the Personal Safety System™ work?***

The Personal Safety System™ can adapt the deployment strategy of your vehicle's safety devices according to crash severity and occupant conditions. A collection of crash and occupant sensors provides information to the Restraints control module (RCM). During a crash, the RCM activates the safety belt pretensioners and/or either one or both stages of the dual-stage airbag supplemental restraints based on crash severity and occupant conditions.

The fact that the pretensioners or airbags did not activate for both front seat occupants in a collision does not mean that something is wrong with the system. Rather, it means the Personal Safety System™ determined the accident conditions (crash severity, belt usage, etc.) were not appropriate to activate these safety devices. Front airbags are designed to activate only in frontal and near-frontal collisions (not rollovers, side impacts or rear impacts) unless the collision causes sufficient longitudinal deceleration. The pretensioners are designed to activate in frontal, and in side collisions and rollovers when the vehicle is equipped with the Safety Canopy™ system.

### ***Driver and passenger dual-stage airbag supplemental restraints***

The dual-stage airbags offer the capability to tailor the level of airbag inflation energy. A lower, less forceful energy level is provided for more common, moderate-severity impacts. A higher energy level is used for the most severe impacts. Refer to *Airbag supplemental restraints* section in this chapter.

### ***Front crash severity sensor***

The front crash severity sensor enhances the ability to detect the severity of an impact. Positioned up front, it provides valuable information early in the crash event on the severity of the impact. This allows your Personal Safety System™ to distinguish between different levels of crash severity and modify the deployment strategy of the dual-stage airbags and safety belt pretensioners.

### ***Driver's seat position sensor***

The driver's seat position sensor allows your Personal Safety System™ to tailor the deployment level of the driver dual-stage airbag based on seat position. The system is designed to help protect smaller drivers sitting close to the driver airbag by providing a lower airbag output level.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

### **Front passenger sensing system**

For airbags to do their job they must inflate with great force, and this force can pose a potentially deadly risk to occupants that are very close to the airbag when it begins to inflate. For some occupants, like infants in rear-facing child seats, this occurs because they are initially sitting very close to the airbag. For other occupants, this occurs when the occupant is not properly restrained by seat belts or child safety seats and they move forward during pre-crash braking. The most effective way to reduce the risk of unnecessary injuries is to make sure all occupants are properly restrained. Accident statistics suggest that children are much safer when properly restrained in the rear seating positions than in the front.



Air bags can kill or injure a child in a child seat. **NEVER** place a rear-facing child seat in front of an active air bag. If you must use a forward-facing child seat in the front seat, move the seat all the way back.



Always transport children 12 years old and under in the back seat and always properly use appropriate child restraints.

The front passenger sensing system can automatically turn off the passenger front airbag. The system is designed to help protect small (child size) occupants from airbag deployments when they are improperly seated or restrained in the front passenger seat contrary to proper child-seating or restraint usage recommendations. Even with this technology, parents are **STRONGLY** encouraged to always properly restrain children in the rear seat. The sensor also turns off the passenger front airbag and passenger seat-mounted side airbag (if equipped) when the passenger seat is empty.

When the front passenger seat is occupied and the sensing system has turned off the passenger's frontal airbag, the "pass airbag off" indicator will light and stay lit to remind you that the front passenger frontal airbag is off. See *Front passenger sensing system* in the airbags section of this chapter.

### **Front safety belt usage sensors**

The front safety belt usage sensors detect whether or not the driver and front outboard passenger safety belts are fastened. This information allows your Personal Safety System<sup>™</sup> to tailor the airbag deployment and safety belt pretensioner activation depending upon safety belt usage. Refer to *Safety restraints* section in this chapter.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

### **Front safety belt pretensioners**

The safety belt pretensioners at the front outboard seating positions are designed to tighten the safety belts firmly against the occupant's body during frontal collisions, and in side collisions and rollovers when the vehicle is equipped with the optional Safety Canopy<sup>™</sup> system. This maximizes the effectiveness of the safety belts. In frontal collisions, the safety belt pretensioners can be activated alone or, if the collision is of sufficient severity, together with the front airbags.

### **Front safety belt energy management retractors**

The front outboard safety belt energy management retractors allow webbing to be pulled out of the retractor in a gradual and controlled manner in response to the occupant's forward momentum. This helps reduce the risk of force-related injuries to the occupant's chest by limiting the load on the occupant. Refer to *Energy management feature* section in this chapter.

### **Determining if the Personal Safety System<sup>™</sup> is operational**

The Personal Safety System<sup>™</sup> uses a warning light in the instrument cluster or a back-up tone to indicate the condition of the system. Refer to the *Warning light* section in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter.

Routine maintenance of the Personal Safety System<sup>™</sup> is not required.

The Restraints control module (RCM) monitors its own internal circuits and the circuits for the airbag supplemental restraints, crash sensor(s), safety belt pretensioners, front safety belt buckle sensors, driver seat position sensor, and passenger occupant classification sensor. In addition, the RCM also monitors the restraints warning light in the instrument cluster. A difficulty with the system is indicated by one or more of the following.

- The warning light will either flash or stay lit.
- The warning light will not illuminate immediately after ignition is turned on.
- A series of five beeps will be heard. The tone pattern will repeat periodically until the problem and warning light are repaired.

If any of these things happen, even intermittently, have the Personal Safety System<sup>™</sup> serviced at an authorized dealer immediately. Unless serviced, the system may not function properly in the event of a collision.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

### Safety restraints precautions



Always drive and ride with your seatback upright and the lap belt snug and low across the hips.



To reduce the risk of injury, make sure children sit where they can be properly restrained.



Never let a passenger hold a child on his or her lap while the vehicle is moving. The passenger cannot protect the child from injury in a collision.



All occupants of the vehicle, including the driver, should always properly wear their safety belts, even when an airbag supplemental restraint system (SRS) is provided.



It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a collision, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and safety belts. Be sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and using a safety belt properly.



In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a safety belt.



Each seating position in your vehicle has a specific safety belt assembly which is made up of one buckle and one tongue that are designed to be used as a pair. 1) Use the shoulder belt on the outside shoulder only. Never wear the shoulder belt under the arm. 2) Never swing the safety belt around your neck over the inside shoulder. 3) Never use a single belt for more than one person.



Always transport children 12 years old and under in the back seat and always properly use appropriate child restraints.

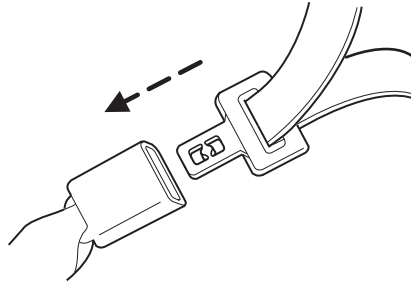
## Seating and Safety Restraints



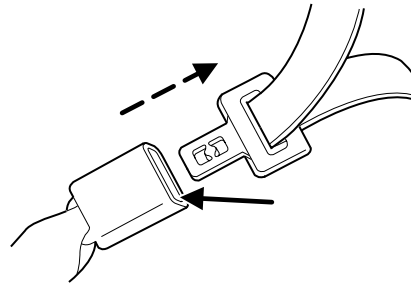
Safety belts and seats can become hot in a vehicle that has been closed up in sunny weather; they could burn a small child. Check seat covers and buckles before you place a child anywhere near them.

### Combination lap and shoulder belts

1. Insert the belt tongue into the proper buckle (the buckle closest to the direction the tongue is coming from) until you hear a snap and feel it latch. Make sure the tongue is securely fastened in the buckle.



2. To unfasten, push the release button and remove the tongue from the buckle.



### Energy Management Feature

- This vehicle has a safety belt system with an energy management feature at the front outboard seating positions to help further reduce the risk of injury in the event of a head-on collision.
- The front outboard safety belt system has a retractor assembly that is designed to extend the safety belt webbing in a controlled manner. This helps reduce the belt force acting on the user's chest.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

All safety belts in the vehicle are combination lap and shoulder belts. The passenger safety belts have two types of locking modes described below:

### Vehicle sensitive mode

This is the normal retractor mode, which allows free shoulder belt length adjustment to your movements and locking in response to vehicle movement. For example, if the driver brakes suddenly or turns a corner sharply, or the vehicle receives an impact of approximately 5 mph (8 km/h) or more, the combination safety belts will lock to help reduce forward movement of the driver and passengers.

### Automatic locking mode

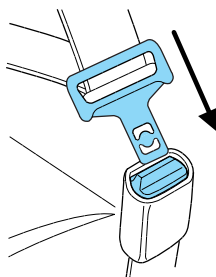
#### *When to use the automatic locking mode*

In this mode, the shoulder belt is automatically pre-locked. The belt will still retract to remove any slack in the shoulder belt. The automatic locking mode is not available on the driver safety belt.

This mode should be used **any time** a child safety seat, except a booster, is installed in passenger front or rear seating positions. Children 12 years old and under should be properly restrained in the rear seat whenever possible. Refer to *Safety restraints for children* or *Safety seats for children* later in this chapter.

#### *How to use the automatic locking mode*

- Buckle the combination lap and shoulder belt.



## Seating and Safety Restraints

- Grasp the shoulder portion and pull downward until the entire belt is pulled out.



- Allow the belt to retract. As the belt retracts, you will hear a clicking sound. This indicates the safety belt is now in the automatic locking mode.

### ***How to disengage the automatic locking mode***

Disconnect the combination lap/shoulder belt and allow it to retract completely to disengage the automatic locking mode and activate the vehicle sensitive (emergency) locking mode.



After any vehicle collision, the safety belt systems at all seating positions (except the driver position, which doesn't have this feature) must be checked by an authorized dealer to verify that the automatic locking retractor feature for child seats is still functioning properly. In addition, all safety belts should be checked for proper function.



**BELT AND RETRACTOR ASSEMBLY MUST BE REPLACED** if the safety belt assembly "automatic locking retractor" feature or any other safety belt function is not operating properly when checked by an authorized dealer. Failure to replace the Belt and Retractor assembly could increase the risk of injury in collisions.

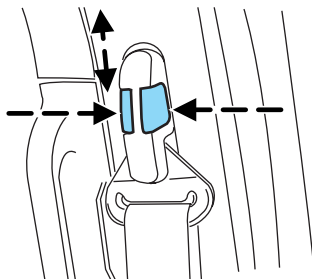


## Seating and Safety Restraints

### Safety belt height adjustment

Your vehicle has safety belt height adjustments at the front outboard seating positions. Adjust the height of the shoulder belt so the belt rests across the middle of your shoulder.

To adjust the shoulder belt height, squeeze and hold the buttons on the side and slide the height adjuster up or down. Release the buttons and pull down on the height adjuster to make sure it is locked in place.



Position the safety belt height adjusters so that the belt rests across the middle of your shoulder. Failure to adjust the safety belt properly could reduce the effectiveness of the safety belt and increase the risk of injury in a collision.

### Safety belt pretensioner

Your vehicle is equipped with safety belt pretensioners at the driver and front passenger seating positions.

The safety belt pretensioners activate during frontal collisions, and in side collisions and rollovers when the vehicle is equipped with the optional Safety Canopy<sup>™</sup> system. A safety belt pretensioner is a device which tightens the webbing of the lap and shoulder belts in such a way that they fit more snugly against the body.



The driver and front passenger safety belt system (including retractors, buckles and height adjusters) must be replaced if the vehicle is involved in a collision that results in deployment of front airbags, seat-mounted side airbags and Safety Canopy<sup>™</sup> (if equipped), and safety belt pretensioners.



Failure to replace the safety belt assembly under the above conditions could result in severe personal injuries in the event of a collision.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

### Safety belt extension assembly

If the safety belt is too short when fully extended, there is an 8 inch (20 cm) safety belt extension assembly that can be added (part number 611C22). This assembly can be obtained from your dealer at no cost.

Use only extensions manufactured by the same supplier as the safety belt. Manufacturer identification is located at the end of the webbing on the label. Also, use the safety belt extension only if the safety belt is too short for you when fully extended.



Do not use extensions to change the fit of the shoulder belt across the torso.

### Safety belt maintenance

Inspect the safety belt systems periodically to make sure they work properly and are not damaged. Inspect the safety belts to make sure there are no nicks, tears or cuts. Replace if necessary. All safety belt assemblies, including retractors, buckles, front safety belt buckle assemblies, buckle support assemblies (slide bar-if equipped), shoulder belt height adjusters (if equipped), shoulder belt guide on seatback (if equipped), child safety seat LATCH and tether anchors, and attaching hardware, should be inspected after a collision. Ford Motor Company recommends that all safety belt assemblies in use in vehicles involved in a collision be replaced. However, if the collision was minor and an authorized dealer finds that the belts do not show damage and continue to operate properly, they do not need to be replaced. Safety belt assemblies not in use during a collision should also be inspected and replaced if either damage or improper operation is noted.



Failure to inspect and if necessary replace the safety belt assembly under the above conditions could result in severe personal injuries in the event of a collision.

For proper care of soiled safety belts, refer to *Interior* in the *Cleaning* chapter.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

### Safety belt warning light and indicator chime

The safety belt warning light illuminates in the instrument cluster and a chime sounds to remind the occupants to fasten their safety belts.

#### Conditions of operation

If...	Then...
The driver's safety belt is not buckled before the ignition switch is turned to the ON position...	The safety belt warning light illuminates 1 minute and the warning chime sounds 6 seconds.
The driver's safety belt is buckled while the indicator light is illuminated and the warning chime is sounding...	The safety belt warning light and warning chime turn off.
The driver's safety belt is buckled before the ignition switch is turned to the ON position...	The safety belt warning light and indicator chime remain off.

### BeltMinder®

The BeltMinder® feature is a supplemental warning to the safety belt warning function. This feature provides additional reminders by intermittently sounding a chime and illuminating the safety belt warning lamp in the instrument cluster when the driver's and front passenger's safety belt is unbuckled.

The BeltMinder® feature uses information from the passenger occupant classification sensor to determine if a front seat passenger is present and therefore potentially in need of a warning. To avoid activating the BeltMinder® feature for objects placed in the front passenger seat, warnings will only be given to large front seat occupants as determined by the passenger occupant classification sensor.

Both the driver's and passenger's safety belt usages are monitored and either may activate the BeltMinder® feature. The warnings are the same for the driver and the front passenger. If the BeltMinder® warnings have expired (warnings for approximately 5 minutes) for one occupant (driver or front passenger), the other occupant can still activate the BeltMinder® feature.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

If...	Then...
The driver's and front passenger's safety belts are buckled before the ignition switch is turned to the ON position or less than 1-2 minutes have elapsed since the ignition switch has been turned ON...	The BeltMinder® feature will not activate.
The driver's or front passenger's safety belt is not buckled when the vehicle has reached at least 5 km/h (3 mph) and 1-2 minutes have elapsed since the ignition switch has been turned to ON...	The BeltMinder® feature is activated - the safety belt warning light illuminates and the warning chime sounds for 6 seconds every 30 seconds, repeating for approximately 5 minutes or until the safety belts are buckled.
The driver's or front passenger's safety belt becomes unbuckled for approximately 1 minute while the vehicle is traveling at least 5 km/h (3 mph) and more than 1-2 minutes have elapsed since the ignition switch has been turned to ON...	The BeltMinder® feature is activated - the safety belt warning light illuminates and the warning chime sounds for 6 seconds every 30 seconds, repeating for approximately 5 minutes or until the safety belts are buckled.


## Seating and Safety Restraints

The following are reasons most often given for not wearing safety belts  
(All statistics based on U.S. data):

Reasons given...	Consider...
"Crashes are rare events"	<b>36700 crashes occur every day.</b> The more we drive, the more we are exposed to "rare" events, even for good drivers. <i>1 in 4 of us will be seriously injured in a crash during our lifetime.</i>
"I'm not going far"	<b>3 of 4</b> fatal crashes occur within <b>25</b> miles of home.
"Belts are uncomfortable"	Your Ford safety belts are designed to enhance comfort. If you are uncomfortable - try different positions for the safety belt upper anchorage and seatback which should be as upright as possible; this can improve comfort.
"I was in a hurry"	<b>Prime time for an accident.</b> BeltMinder® reminds us to take a few seconds to buckle up.
"Seat belts don't work"	<b>Safety belts</b> , when used properly, <b>reduce risk of death</b> to front seat occupants by <b>45% in cars</b> , and by <b>60% in light trucks</b> .
"Traffic is light"	<b>Nearly 1 of 2 deaths occur in single-vehicle crashes</b> , many when no other vehicles are around.
"Belts wrinkle my clothes"	Possibly, but a serious crash can do much more than wrinkle your clothes, particularly if you are unbelted.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

Reasons given...	Consider...
"The people I'm with don't wear belts"	Set the example, teen deaths occur 4 times more often in vehicles with TWO or MORE people. Children and younger brothers/sisters imitate behavior they see.
"I have an airbag"	Airbags offer greater protection when used with safety belts. Frontal airbags are not designed to inflate in rear and side crashes or rollovers.
"I'd rather be thrown clear"	Not a good idea. <b>People</b> who are <b>ejected are 40 times more likely to DIE</b> . Safety belts help prevent ejection, WE CAN'T "PICK OUR CRASH".

 Do not sit on top of a buckled safety belt or insert a latchplate into the buckle to avoid the BeltMinder® chime. Buckling the belt affects (and may prevent) frontal and side impact air bag inflation and will increase the risk of injury in an accident. To disable (one-time) or deactivate the BeltMinder® feature please follow the directions stated below.

### **One time disable**

If at any time the driver/front passenger quickly buckles then unbuckles the safety belt for that seating position, the BeltMinder® is disabled for the current ignition cycle. The BeltMinder® feature will enable during the same ignition cycle if the occupant buckles and remains buckled for approximately 30 seconds. Confirmation is not given for the one time disable.

### **Deactivating/activating the BeltMinder® feature**

**The driver and front passenger BeltMinder® are deactivated/activated independently. When deactivating/activating one seating position, do not buckle the other position as this will terminate the process.**

## Seating and Safety Restraints

*Read Steps 1 - 4 thoroughly before proceeding with the deactivation/activation programming procedure.*

The driver and front passenger BeltMinder® features can be deactivated/activated by performing the following procedure:

Before following the procedure, make sure that:

- The parking brake is set
- The gearshift is in P (Park) (automatic transmission)
- The gearshift is in N (Neutral) (manual transmission)
- The ignition switch is in the OFF position
- The driver and front passenger safety belts are unbuckled



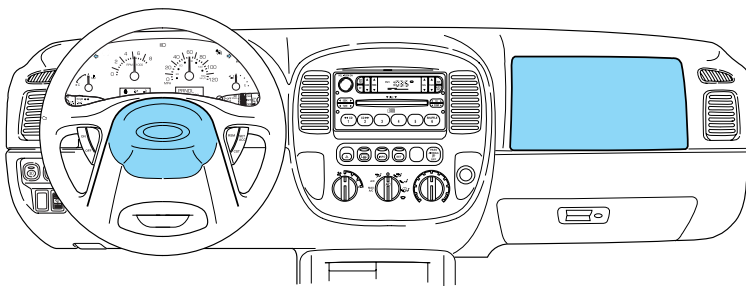
While the design allows you to deactivate your BeltMinder®, this system is designed to improve your chances of being seat belted and surviving an accident, and we recommend you leave the BeltMinder® system activated for yourself and others who may use the vehicle. To reduce the risk of injury, do not deactivate/activate the BeltMinder® feature while driving the vehicle.

1. Turn the ignition switch to the RUN (or ON) position. (DO NOT START THE ENGINE)
2. Wait until the safety belt warning light turns off. (Approximately 1 minute)
  - Step 3 must be completed within 50 seconds after the safety belt warning light turns off.
3. For the seating position being disabled, buckle then unbuckle the safety belt 9 times, ending in the unbuckled state. (Step 3 must be completed within 50 seconds after the safety belt warning light turns off.)
  - After Step 3, the restraint system warning light (airbag light) will be turned on for three seconds.
4. Within 10 seconds of the light turning on, buckle then unbuckle the safety belt.
  - This will disable the BeltMinder® feature for that seating position if it is currently enabled. As confirmation, the restraint system warning light will flash 4 times per second for 3 seconds.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

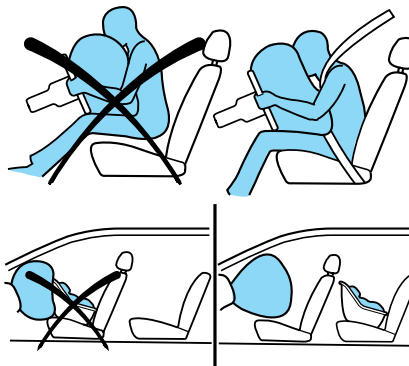
- This will enable the BeltMinder® feature for that seating position if it is currently disabled. As confirmation, the restraint system warning light will flash 4 times per second for 3 seconds, followed by 3 seconds with the light off, then followed by the restraint system warning light flashing 4 times per second for 3 seconds again.
- After receiving confirmation, the deactivation/activation procedure is complete.

### AIRBAG SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM (SRS)



#### Important SRS precautions

The SRS is designed to work with the safety belt to help protect the driver and right front passenger from certain upper body injuries. Airbags DO NOT inflate slowly; there is a risk of injury from a deploying airbag.



All occupants of the vehicle, including the driver, should always properly wear their safety belts, even when an air bag supplemental restraint system (SRS) is provided.



## Seating and Safety Restraints



Always transport children 12 years old and under in the back seat and always properly use appropriate child restraints.



The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) recommends a minimum distance of at least 10 inches (25 cm) between an occupant's chest and the driver airbag module.



Never place your arm over the airbag module as a deploying airbag can result in serious arm fractures or other injuries.

To properly position yourself away from the airbag:

- Move your seat to the rear as far as you can while still reaching the pedals comfortably.
- Recline the seat slightly one or two degrees from the upright position.



Do not put anything on or over the airbag module. Placing objects on or over the airbag inflation area may cause those objects to be propelled by the airbag into your face and torso causing serious injury.



Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the airbag supplemental restraint systems or its fuses. See your authorized dealer.



Modifications to the front end of the vehicle, including frame, bumper, front end body structure, tow hooks and B-pillar surrounding parts may affect the performance of the airbag sensors increasing the risk of injury. Do not modify the front end of the vehicle.



Additional equipment may affect the performance of the airbag sensors increasing the risk of injury. Please refer to the *Body Builders Layout Book* for instructions about the appropriate installation of additional equipment.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

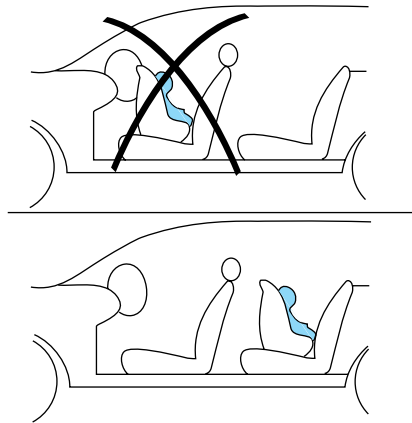
### Children and airbags

Children must always be properly restrained. Accident statistics suggest that children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seating positions than in the front seating position. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of injury in a collision.



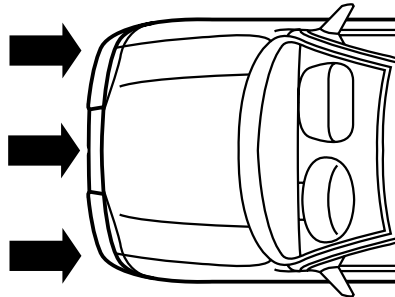
Airbags can kill or injure a child in a child seat.

**NEVER** place a rear-facing child seat in front of an active airbag. If you must use a forward-facing child seat in the front seat, move the seat all the way back.



### How does the airbag supplemental restraint system work?

The airbag SRS is designed to activate when the vehicle sustains a longitudinal deceleration sufficient to cause the airbag sensors to close an electrical circuit that initiates airbag inflation. The fact that the airbags did not inflate in a collision does not mean that something is wrong with the system. Rather, it means the forces were not sufficient enough to cause activation. Front airbags are designed to inflate in frontal and near-frontal collisions, not rollover, side-impact, or rear-impacts unless the collision causes sufficient longitudinal deceleration.



## Seating and Safety Restraints

The airbags inflate and deflate rapidly upon activation. After airbag deployment, it is normal to notice a smoke-like, powdery residue or smell the burnt propellant. This may consist of cornstarch, talcum powder or sodium compounds which may irritate the skin and eyes, but none of the residue is toxic.



While the SRS is designed to help reduce serious injuries, contact with a deploying airbag may also cause abrasions, swelling or temporary hearing loss. Because airbags must inflate rapidly and with considerable force, there is the risk of death or serious injuries such as fractures, facial and eye injuries or internal injuries, particularly to occupants who are not properly restrained or are otherwise out of position at the time of airbag deployment. It is extremely important that occupants be properly restrained as far away from the airbag module as possible while maintaining vehicle control.

The SRS consists of:

- driver and passenger airbag modules (which include the inflators and airbags).
- seat-mounted side airbags (if equipped). Refer to *Seat-mounted side airbag system* later in this chapter
- Safety Canopy<sup>™</sup> system (if equipped). Refer to *Safety Canopy<sup>™</sup> system* later in this chapter.
- one or more impact and safing sensors.
- a readiness light and tone.
- diagnostic module.
- and the electrical wiring which connects the components.
- Front passenger sensing system. Refer to *Front passenger sensing system*. later in this chapter.
- “Passenger airbag off” or “pass airbag off” indicator lamp. Refer to *Front passenger sensing system* later in this chapter.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

The RCM (restraints control module) monitors its own internal circuits and the supplemental airbag electrical system wiring (including the impact sensors, the system wiring, the airbag system readiness light, the airbag back up power and the airbag ignitors).



Several air bag system components get hot after inflation. Do not touch them after inflation.



If the airbag has deployed, **the airbag will not function again and must be replaced immediately.** If the airbag is not replaced, the unrepaired area will increase the risk of injury in a collision.

### Front passenger sensing system

The front passenger sensing system is designed to meet the regulatory requirements of Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (FMVSS) 208 and is designed to disable (will not inflate) the front passenger's frontal airbag under certain conditions.

The front passenger sensing system works with sensors that are part of the front passenger's seat and safety belt. The sensors are designed to detect the presence of a properly seated occupant and determine if the front passenger's frontal airbag should be enabled (may inflate) or disabled (will not inflate).

The front passenger sensing system will disable (will not inflate) the front passenger's frontal airbag if:

- the front passenger seat is unoccupied, or has small/medium objects in the front seat,
- the system determines that an infant is present in a rear-facing infant seat that is installed according to the manufacturer's instructions,
- the system determines that a small child is present in a forward-facing child restraint that is installed according to the manufacturer's instructions,
- the system determines that a small child is present in a booster seat,
- a front passenger takes his/her weight off of the seat for a period of time,

## Seating and Safety Restraints

For side airbag equipped vehicles, the front passenger sensing system will turn off the passenger seat side airbag if:

- the seat is empty and safety belt is unbuckled.

The front passenger sensing system uses a "passenger airbag off" or "pass airbag off" indicator which will illuminate and stay lit to remind you that the front passenger frontal airbag is off. The indicator lamp is located in the center stack of the instrument panel just below the radio.



**Note:** The indicator lamp will illuminate for a short period of time when the ignition is turned to the ON position to confirm it is functional.

When the front passenger seat is not occupied (empty seat) or in the event that the front passenger frontal airbag is enabled (may inflate), the indicator lamp will be unlit.

The front passenger sensing system is designed to disable (will not inflate) the front passenger's frontal airbag when a rear facing infant seat, a forward-facing child restraint, or a booster seat is detected.

- When the front passenger sensing system disables (will not inflate) the front passenger frontal airbag, the indicator lamp will illuminate and stay lit to remind you that the front passenger frontal airbag is disabled.
- If the child restraint has been installed and the indicator lamp is not lit, then turn the vehicle off, remove the child restraint from the vehicle and reinstall the restraint following the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.

The front passenger sensing system is designed to enable (may inflate) the front passenger's frontal airbag anytime the system senses that a person of adult size is sitting properly in the front passenger seat.

- When the front passenger sensing system enables the front passenger frontal airbag (may inflate), the indicator will be unlit and stay unlit.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

If a person of adult size is sitting in the front passenger's seat, but the "passenger airbag off" or "pass airbag off" indicator lamp is lit, it is possible that the person isn't sitting properly in the seat. If this happens:

- Turn the vehicle off and ask the person to place the seatback in the full upright position.
- Have the person sit upright in the seat, centered on the seat cushion, with the person's legs comfortably extended.
- Restart the vehicle and have the person remain in this position for about two minutes. This will allow the system to detect that person and enable the passenger's frontal airbag.
- If the indicator lamp remains lit even after this, the person should be advised to ride in the rear seat.

Occupant	Pass Airbag Off Indicator Lamp	Passenger Airbag
Empty seat	Unlit	Disabled
Small child in child safety seat or booster	Lit	Disabled
Small child with safety belt buckled or unbuckled	Lit	Disabled
Adult	Unlit	Enabled



Even with Advanced Restraints Systems, children 12 and under should be properly restrained in the back seat.

After all occupants have adjusted their seats and put on safety belts, it's very important that they continue to sit properly. A properly seated occupant sits upright, leaning against the seat back, and centered on the seat cushion, with their feet comfortably extended on the floor. Sitting improperly can increase the chance of injury in a crash event. For example, if an occupant slouches, lies down, turns sideways, sits forward, leans forward or sideways, or puts one or both feet up, the chance of injury during a crash is greatly increased.



Sitting improperly out of position or with the seat back reclined too far can take off weight from the seat cushion and affect the decision of the front passenger sensing system, resulting in serious injury or death in a crash.

Always sit upright against your seatback, with your feet on the floor.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

The front passenger sensing system may detect small or medium objects placed on the seat cushion. For most objects that are in the front passenger seat, the passenger airbag will be disabled. Even though the passenger airbag is disabled, the "pass airbag off" lamp may or may not be illuminated according to the table below.

Objects	Pass Airbag Off Indicator Lamp	Passenger Airbag
Small (i.e. 3 ring binder, small purse, bottled water)	Unlit	Disabled
Medium (i.e. heavy briefcase, fully packed luggage)	Lit	Disabled
Empty seat, Small or medium object with safety belt buckled	Lit	Disabled

If you think that the status of the passenger airbag off indicator lamp is incorrect, check for the following:

- Objects lodged underneath the seat
- Objects between the seat cushion and the center console (if equipped)
- Objects hanging off the seat back
- Objects stowed in the seatback map pocket (if equipped)
- Objects placed on the occupant's lap
- Cargo interference with the seat
- Other passengers pushing or pulling on the seat
- Rear passenger feet and knees resting or pushing on the seat

The conditions listed above may cause the weight of a properly seated occupant to be incorrectly interpreted by the front passenger sensing system. The person in the front passenger seat may appear heavier or lighter due to the conditions described in the list above.

## Seating and Safety Restraints



To reduce the risk of possible serious injury:  
Do not stow objects in seat back map pocket (if equipped) or hang objects off seat back if a child is in the front passenger seat. Do not place objects underneath the front passenger seat or between the seat and the center console (if equipped). Check the “passenger airbag off” or “pass airbag off” indicator lamp for proper airbag Status. Failure to follow these instructions may interfere with the front passenger seat sensing system.

In case there is a problem with the front passenger sensing system, the airbag readiness lamp in the instrument cluster will stay lit.



### **If the airbag readiness lamp is lit, do the following:**

The driver and/or adult passengers should check for any objects that may be lodged underneath the front passenger seat or cargo interfering with the seat.

If objects are lodged and/or cargo is interfering with the seat; please take the following steps to remove the obstruction:

- Pull the vehicle over.
- Turn the vehicle off.
- Driver and/or adult passengers should check for any objects lodged underneath the front passenger seat or cargo interfering with the seat.
- Remove the obstruction(s) (if found).
- Restart the vehicle.
- Wait at least 2 minutes and verify that the airbag readiness lamp is no longer illuminated
- If the airbag readiness lamp remains illuminated, this may or may/not be a problem due to the front passenger sensing system.

DO NOT attempt to repair or service the system; take your vehicle immediately to an authorized dealer.

If it is necessary to modify an advanced front airbag system to accommodate a person with disabilities, contact the Ford Customer Relationship Center at the phone number shown in the *Customer Assistance* chapter of this *Owner's Guide*.



## Seating and Safety Restraints



Any alteration/modification to the front passenger seat may affect the performance of the front passenger sensing system.

### ***Determining if the system is operational***

The SRS uses a readiness light in the instrument cluster or a tone to indicate the status of the system. Refer to *Airbag readiness* section in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter. Routine maintenance of the airbag is not required.

A difficulty with the system is indicated by one or more of the following:

- The readiness light will either flash or stay lit.
- The readiness light will not illuminate immediately after ignition is turned on.
- A series of five beeps will be heard. The tone pattern will repeat periodically until the problem and/or light are repaired.



If any of these things happen, even intermittently, have the SRS serviced at an authorized dealer immediately. Unless serviced, the system may not function properly in the event of a collision.

### **Seat-mounted side airbag system (if equipped)**



Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the airbag cover on the side of the seatbacks of the front seats or in front seat areas that may come into contact with a deploying airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a collision.





Do not use accessory seat covers. The use of accessory seat covers may prevent the deployment of the side airbags and increase the risk of injury in an accident.



Do not lean your head on the door. The side airbag could injure you as it deploys from the side of the seatback.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

 Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the airbag SRS, its fuses or the seat cover on a seat containing an airbag. See an authorized dealer.

 All occupants of the vehicle should always wear their safety belts even when an airbag SRS is provided.

### **How does the side airbag system work?**

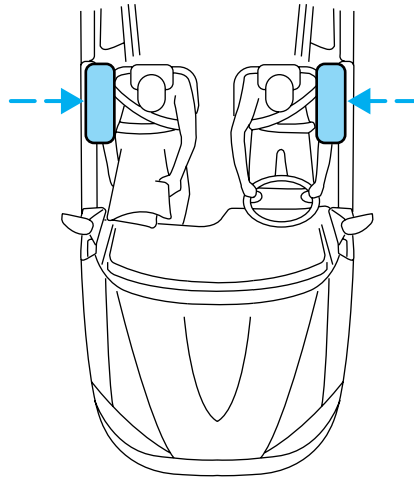
The design and development of the side airbag system included recommended testing procedures that were developed by a group of automotive safety experts known as the Side Airbag Technical Working Group. These recommended testing procedures help reduce the risk of injuries related to the deployment of side airbags.

The side airbag system consists of the following:

- An inflatable nylon bag (airbag) with a gas generator concealed behind the outboard bolster of the driver and front passenger seatbacks.
- A special seat cover designed to allow airbag deployment.
- The same warning light, electronic control and diagnostic unit as used for the front airbags.
- Two crash sensors located on the lower portion of the b-pillar (one on each side of the vehicle).

Side airbags, in combination with safety belts, can help reduce the risk of severe injuries in the event of a significant side impact collision.

The side airbags are fitted on the outboard side of the seatbacks of the front seats. In certain lateral collisions, the airbag on the side affected by the collision will be inflated. If the front passenger sensing system detects an empty seat, the front passenger seat-mounted side airbag will be deactivated. The airbag was designed to inflate between the door panel and occupant to further enhance the protection provided occupants in side impact collisions.



## Seating and Safety Restraints

The airbag SRS is designed to activate when the vehicle sustains lateral deceleration sufficient to cause the sensors to close an electrical circuit that initiates airbag inflation.

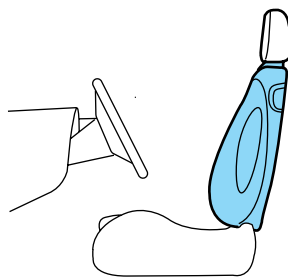
The fact that the airbags did not inflate in a collision does not mean that something is wrong with the system. Rather, it means the forces were not of the type sufficient to cause activation. Side airbags are designed to inflate in side-impact collisions, not roll-over, rear-impact, frontal or near-frontal collisions, unless the collision causes sufficient lateral deceleration.



Several airbag system components get hot after inflation. Do not touch them after inflation.



If the side airbag has deployed, **the airbag will not function again. The side airbag system (including the seat) must be inspected and serviced by an authorized dealer.** If the airbag is not replaced, the unrepaired area will increase the risk of injury in a collision.



### ***Determining if the system is operational***

The SRS uses a readiness light in the instrument cluster or a tone to indicate the condition of the system. Refer to the *Airbag readiness* section in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter. Routine maintenance of the side airbag is not required.


A difficulty with the system is indicated by one or more of the following:

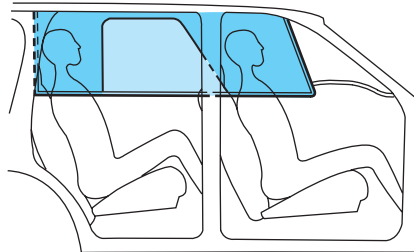
- The readiness light (same light as for front airbag system) will either flash or stay lit.
- The readiness light will not illuminate immediately after ignition is turned on.
- A series of five beeps will be heard. The tone pattern will repeat periodically until the problem and/or light are repaired.


If any of these things happen, even intermittently, have the SRS serviced at your authorized dealer immediately. Unless serviced, the system may not function properly in the event of a collision.


## Seating and Safety Restraints


### Safety Canopy™ system (if equipped)


 Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the headliner at the siderail that may come into contact with a deploying Safety Canopy™. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a collision.



 Do not lean your head on the door. The Safety Canopy™ could injure you as it deploys from the headliner.

 Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the Safety Canopy™ system, its fuses, the A, B, or C pillar trim, or the headliner on a vehicle containing a Safety Canopy™. See your authorized dealer.

 All occupants of the vehicle including the driver should always wear their safety belts even when an airbag SRS and Safety Canopy™ system is provided.

 To reduce risk of injury, do not obstruct or place objects in the deployment path of the inflatable Safety Canopy™.

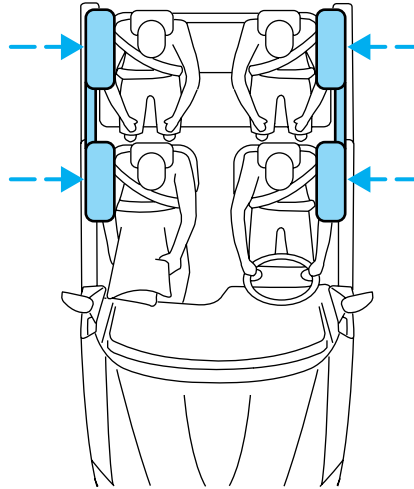
## Seating and Safety Restraints

### **How does the Safety Canopy™ system work?**

The design and development of the Safety Canopy™ system included recommended testing procedures that were developed by a group of automotive safety experts known as the Side Airbag Technical Working Group. These recommended testing procedures help reduce the risk of injuries related to the deployment of side airbags (including the Safety Canopy™).

The Safety Canopy™ system consists of the following:

- An inflatable nylon curtain with a gas generator concealed behind the headliner and above the doors (one on each side of vehicle).
- A headliner designed to flex open above the side doors to allow Safety Canopy™ deployment.
- The same warning light, electronic control and diagnostic unit as used for the front airbags.
- Two crash sensors mounted at lower B-Pillar (one on each side).
- Two crash sensors located at the c-pillar behind the rear doors (one on each side).
- Rollover sensor in the restraints control module (RCM).



The Safety Canopy™ system, in combination with safety belts, can help reduce the risk of severe injuries in the event of a significant side impact collision or rollover event.

Children 12 years old and under should always be properly restrained in the second or third row seats. The Safety Canopy™ will not interfere with children restrained using a properly installed child or booster seat because it is designed to inflate downward from the headliner above the doors along the side window opening.

The Safety Canopy™ system is designed to active when the vehicle sustains lateral deceleration sufficient to cause the RCM to initiate Safety Canopy™ inflation or when a certain likelihood of a rollover event is detected by the rollover sensor.

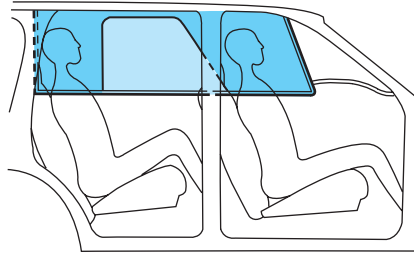
## Seating and Safety Restraints

The Safety Canopy™ is mounted to roof side-rail sheet metal, behind the headliner, above the first and second row seats. The Safety Canopy™ is designed to inflate between the side window area and occupants to further enhance protection provided in side impact collisions and rollover events.

The fact that the Safety Canopy™ did not activate in a collision does not mean that something is wrong with the system. Rather, it means the forces were not of the type sufficient to cause activation. The Safety Canopy™ is designed to inflate in certain side impact collisions or rollover events, not in rear impact, frontal or near-frontal collisions, unless the collision causes sufficient lateral deceleration or rollover likelihood.



Several Safety Canopy™ system components get hot after inflation. Do not touch them after inflation.



If the Safety Canopy™ system has deployed, **the Safety Canopy™ will not function again unless replaced. The Safety Canopy™ system (including the A, B and C pillar trim) must be inspected and serviced by a authorized dealer.** If the Safety Canopy™ is not replaced, the unrepaired area will increase the risk of injury in a collision.

### ***Determining if the system is operational***

The SRS uses a readiness light in the instrument cluster or a tone to indicate the condition of the system. Refer to the *Airbag readiness* section in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter. Routine maintenance of the side airbag is not required.

A difficulty with the system is indicated by one or more of the following:

- The readiness light (same light as for front airbag system) will either flash or stay lit.
- The readiness light will not illuminate immediately after ignition is turned on.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

- A series of five beeps will be heard. The tone pattern will repeat periodically until the problem and/or light are repaired.

If any of these things happen, even intermittently, have the SRS serviced at your authorized dealer immediately. Unless serviced, the system may not function properly in the event of a collision.

### **Disposal of airbags and airbag equipped vehicles (including pretensioners)**

See your authorized dealer. Airbags MUST BE disposed of by qualified personnel.

### **SAFETY RESTRAINTS FOR CHILDREN**

See the following sections for directions on how to properly use safety restraints for children. Also see *Airbag supplemental restraint system (SRS)* in this chapter for special instructions about using airbags.

#### **Important child restraint precautions**

You are required by law to use safety restraints for children in the U.S. and Canada. If small children (generally children who are four years old or younger and who weigh 40 lb. [18 kg] or less) ride in your vehicle, you must put them in safety seats made especially for children. Many states require that children use approved booster seats until they are eight years old. Check your local and state or provincial laws for specific requirements regarding the safety of children in your vehicle. When possible, always place children under age 12 in the rear seat of your vehicle. Accident statistics suggest that children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seating positions than in the front seating position.



Never let a passenger hold a child on his or her lap while the vehicle is moving. The passenger cannot protect the child from injury in a collision.

Always follow the instructions and warnings that come with any infant or child restraint you might use.

#### **Children and safety belts**

If the child is the proper size, restrain the child in a safety seat. Children who are too large for child safety seats (as specified by your child safety seat manufacturer) should always wear safety belts.

Follow all the important safety restraint and airbag precautions that apply to adult passengers in your vehicle.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

If the shoulder belt portion of a combination lap and shoulder belt can be positioned so it does not cross or rest in front of the child's face or neck, the child should wear the lap and shoulder belt. Moving the child closer to the center of the vehicle may help provide a good shoulder belt fit.



Do not leave children, unreliable adults, or pets unattended in your vehicle.

### Child booster seats

Children outgrow a typical convertible or toddler seat when they weigh 40 lb. (18 kg) and are around 4 years of age. Although the lap/shoulder belt will provide some protection, these children are still too small for lap/shoulder belts to fit properly, which could increase the risk of serious injury in a crash.

To improve the fit of both the lap and shoulder belt on children who have outgrown child safety seats, Ford Motor Company recommends use of a belt-positioning booster.

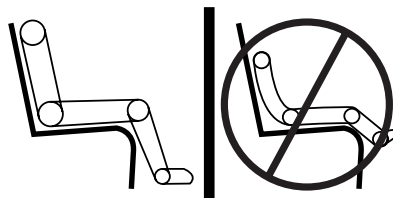
Booster seats position a child so that safety belts fit better. They lift the child up so that the lap belt rests low across the hips and the knees bend comfortably. Booster seats may also make the shoulder belt fit better and more comfortably. Try to keep the belt near the middle of the shoulder.

### When children should use booster seats

Children need to use booster seats from the time they outgrow the toddler seat until they are big enough for the vehicle seat and lap/shoulder belt to fit properly. Generally this is when they weigh about 80 lb. (36 kg) (about 8 to 12 years old).

Booster seats should be used until you can answer YES to ALL of these questions:

- Can the child sit all the way back against the vehicle seat back with knees bent comfortably at the edge of the seat without slouching?



- Does the lap belt rest low across the hips?



## Seating and Safety Restraints

- Is the shoulder belt centered on the shoulder and chest?
- Can the child stay seated like this for the whole trip?

### **Types of booster seats**

There are two types of belt-positioning booster seats:

- Those that are backless.

If your backless booster seat has a removable shield, remove the shield and use the lap/shoulder belt. If a seating position has a low seat back and no head restraint, a backless booster seat may place your child's head (top of ear level) above the top of the seat. In this case, move the backless booster to another seating position with a higher seat back and lap/shoulder belts.



- Those with a high back.

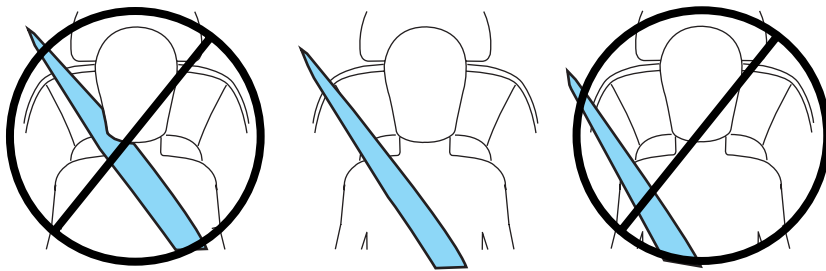
If, with a backless booster seat, you cannot find a seating position that adequately supports your child's head, a high back booster seat would be a better choice.



Either type can be used at any seating position equipped with lap/shoulder belts if your child is over 40 lb. (18 kg).

## Seating and Safety Restraints

Children and booster seats vary widely in size and shape. Choose a booster that keeps the lap belt low and snug across the hips, never up across the stomach, and lets you adjust the shoulder belt to cross the chest and rest snugly near the center of the shoulder. The drawings below compare the ideal fit (center) to a shoulder belt uncomfortably close to the neck and a shoulder belt that could slip off the shoulder.



If the booster seat slides on the vehicle seat, placing a rubberized mesh sold as shelf or carpet liner under the booster seat may improve this condition.

### The importance of shoulder belts

Using a booster without a shoulder belt increases the risk of a child's head hitting a hard surface in a collision. For this reason, you should never use a booster seat with a lap belt only. It is best to use a booster seat with lap/shoulder belts in the back seat- the safest place for children to ride.



Move a child to a different seating location if the shoulder belt does not stay positioned on the shoulder during use.



Follow all instructions provided by the manufacturer of the booster seat.



Never put the shoulder belt under a child's arm or behind the back because it eliminates the protection for the upper part of the body and may increase the risk of injury or death in a collision.

## Seating and Safety Restraints



Never use pillows, books, or towels to boost a child. They can slide around and increase the likelihood of injury or death in a collision.

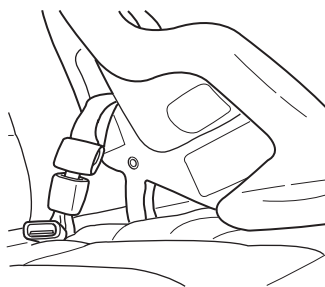
### SAFETY SEATS FOR CHILDREN

#### Child and infant or child safety seats

Use a safety seat that is recommended for the size and weight of the child. Carefully follow all of the manufacturer's instructions with the safety seat you put in your vehicle. If you do not install and use the safety seat properly, the child may be injured in a sudden stop or collision.

When installing a child safety seat:

- Review and follow the information presented in the *airbag supplemental restraint system* (SRS) section in this chapter.
- Use the correct safety belt buckle for that seating position (the buckle closest to the direction the tongue is coming from).
- Insert the belt tongue into the proper buckle until you hear a snap and feel it latch. Make sure the tongue is securely fastened in the buckle.
- Keep the buckle release button pointing up and away from the safety seat, with the tongue between the child seat and the release button, to prevent accidental unbuckling.
- Place seat back in upright position.
- Put the safety belt in the automatic locking mode. Refer to *Automatic locking mode (passenger side front and outboard rear seating positions) (if equipped)* section in this chapter.
- LATCH lower anchors are recommended for use by children up to 48 lb. (22 kg) in a child restraint. Top tether anchors can be used for children up to 60 lb. (27 kg) in a child restraint, and to provide upper torso restraint for children up to 80 lb. (36 kg) using an upper torso harness and a belt-positioning booster.



## Seating and Safety Restraints

Ford recommends the use of a child safety seat having a top tether strap. Install the child safety seat in a seating position with LATCH and tether anchors. For more information on top tether straps and anchors, refer to *Attaching safety seats with tether straps* in this chapter. For more information of LATCH anchors refer to *Attaching safety seats with LATCH (Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children) attachments* in this chapter.



Carefully follow all of the manufacturer's instructions included with the safety seat you put in your vehicle. If you do not install and use the safety seat properly, the child may be injured in a sudden stop or collision.



Rear-facing child seats or infant carriers should never be placed in front of an active passenger airbag.

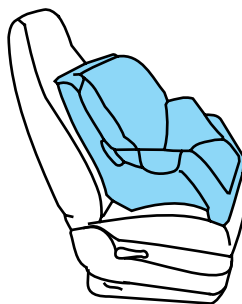
### Installing child safety seats with combination lap and shoulder belts

**The rear seat head restraints must be removed when using a child seat.**



Airbags can kill or injure a child in a child seat. **NEVER** place a rear-facing child seat in front of an active air bag. If you must use a forward-facing child seat in the front seat, move the seat all the way back.

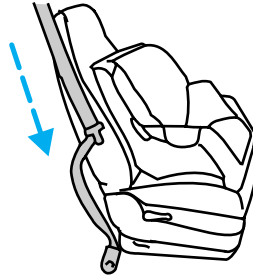
1. Position the child safety seat in a seat with a combination lap and shoulder belt.



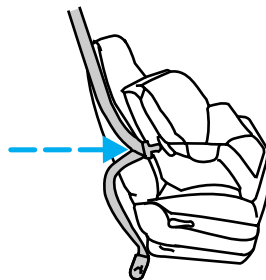
Children 12 and under should be properly restrained in the rear seat whenever possible.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

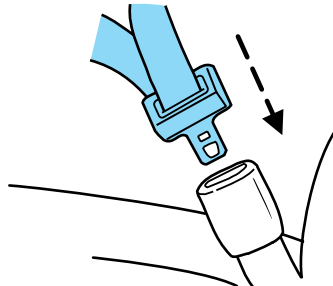
2. Pull down on the shoulder belt and then grasp the shoulder belt and lap belt together.



3. While holding the shoulder and lap belt portions together, route the tongue through the child seat according to the child seat manufacturer's instructions. Be sure the belt webbing is not twisted.

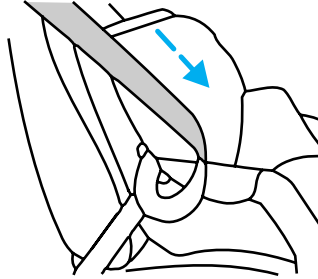


4. Insert the belt tongue into the proper buckle (the buckle closest to the direction the tongue is coming from) for that seating position until you hear a snap and feel the latch engage. Make sure the tongue is latched securely by pulling on it.



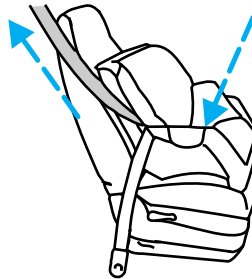
## Seating and Safety Restraints

5. To put the retractor in the automatic locking mode, grasp the shoulder portion of the belt and pull downward until all of the belt is extracted and a click is heard.



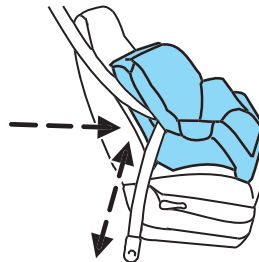
6. Allow the belt to retract. The belt will click as it retracts to indicate it is in the automatic locking mode.

7. Pull the lap belt portion across the child seat toward the buckle and pull up on the shoulder belt while pushing down with your knee on the child seat.



8. Allow the safety belt to retract to remove any slack in the belt.

9. Before placing the child in the seat, forcibly tilt the seat forward and back to make sure the seat is securely held in place. To check this, grab the seat at the belt path and attempt to move it side to side and forward and back. There should be no more than one inch of movement for proper installation.



10. Try to pull the belt out of the retractor to make sure the retractor is in the automatic locking mode (you should not be able to pull more belt out). If the retractor is not locked, unbuckle the belt and repeat Steps 2 through 9.

Check to make sure the child seat is properly secured before each use.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

### Attaching child safety seats with tether straps

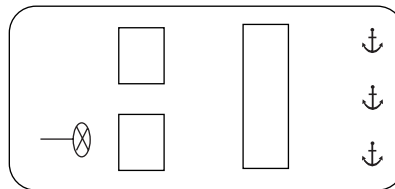
Most new forward-facing child safety seats include a tether strap which goes over the back of the seat and hooks to an anchoring point. Tether straps are available as an accessory for many older safety seats. Contact the manufacturer of your child seat for information about ordering a tether strap.

The rear seating positions of your vehicle are equipped with built-in tether strap anchors located behind the seats on the roof panel in the cargo area.

The tether strap anchors in your vehicle are in the following positions:



Attach the tether strap only to the appropriate tether anchor as shown. The tether strap may not work properly if attached somewhere other than the correct tether anchor.

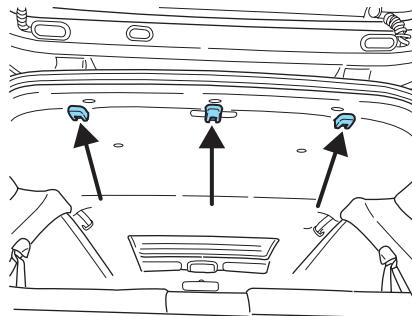


1. Position the child safety seat on the seat cushion.
2. Route the child safety seat tether strap over the back of the seat.

For vehicles with adjustable head restraints, remove the head restraint first, place under the front seat for storage, and then route the tether strap over the top of the seatback.

3. Locate the correct anchor for the selected seating position.

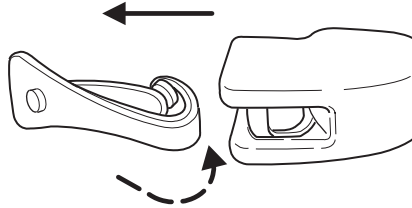
There are three tether anchors located on the headliner at the rear of the vehicle.



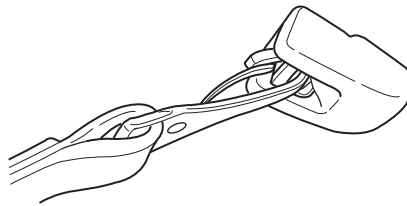
## Seating and Safety Restraints

4. Clip the tether strap to the anchor as shown.

The arrow in the above graphic points toward the front of the vehicle.



If the tether strap is clipped incorrectly, the child safety seat may not be retained properly in the event of a collision.



5. Install the child safety seat tightly using the LATCH anchors or safety belts. Follow the instructions in this chapter.

6. Tighten the child safety seat tether strap according to the manufacturer's instructions.



If the safety seat is not anchored properly, the risk of a child being injured in a collision greatly increases.

### Attaching safety seats with LATCH (Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children) attachments for child seat anchors

Some child safety seats have two rigid or webbing mounted attachments that connect to two anchors at certain seating positions in your vehicle. This type of child seat eliminates the need to use safety belts to attach the child seat. For forward-facing child seats, the tether strap must also be attached to the proper tether anchor. See *Attaching safety seats with tether straps* in this chapter.

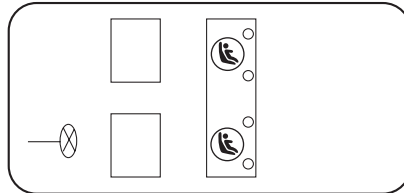


## Seating and Safety Restraints

Your vehicle has LATCH anchors for child seat installation at the following locations:

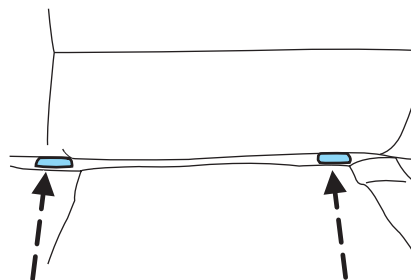
The anchors on both sides of the center of the rear seat are provided primarily for child seats at the outboard seats, and are further apart than the pairs of lower anchors for child seat installation at other seats. A child seat with rigid LATCH attachments cannot be installed at the center rear seat. A

child seat with LATCH attachments on belt webbing can be used at the center rear seat unless a child seat at an outboard rear seat is attached to one of these lower anchors. Install a child seat onto the lower anchors at the center rear seat **ONLY IF** the child restraint manufacturer recommends that the child seat can be installed to anchors that are spaced up to 20 in (500 mm) apart.



Never attach two LATCH child safety seats to the same anchor. In a crash, one anchor may not be strong enough to hold two child safety seat attachments and may break, causing serious injury or death.

The lower anchors for child seat installation are located at the rear section of the second row seat between the cushion and seat back.



Follow the child seat manufacturer's instructions to properly install a child seat with LATCH attachments.



Attach LATCH lower attachments of the child seat only to the anchors shown.

## Seating and Safety Restraints

If you install a child seat with rigid LATCH attachments, do not tighten the tether strap enough to lift the child seat off the vehicle seat cushion when the child is seated in it. Keep the tether strap just snug without lifting the front of the child seat. Keeping the child seat just touching the vehicle seat gives the best protection in a severe crash.

Each time you use the safety seat, check that the seat is properly attached to the lower anchors and tether anchor. Try to tilt the child seat from side to side. Also try to tug the seat forward. Check to see if the anchors hold the seat in place.

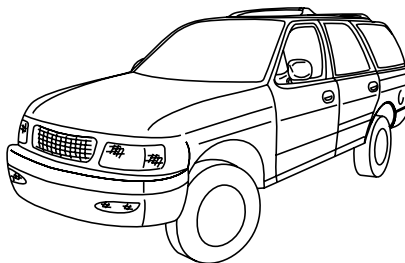


If the safety seat is not anchored properly, the risk of a child being injured in a crash greatly increases.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

### NOTICE TO UTILITY VEHICLE AND TRUCK OWNERS

Utility vehicles and trucks handle differently than passenger cars in the various driving conditions that are encountered on streets, highways and off-road. Utility vehicles and trucks are not designed for cornering at speeds as high as passenger cars any more than low-slung sports cars are designed to perform satisfactorily under off-road conditions.



Utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles. To reduce the risk of serious injury or death from a rollover or other crash you must:

- Avoid sharp turns and abrupt maneuvers;
- Drive at safe speeds for the conditions;
- Keep tires properly inflated;
- Never overload or improperly load your vehicle; and
- Make sure every passenger is properly restrained.



In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seat belt. All occupants must wear safety belts and children/infants must use appropriate restraints to minimize the risk of injury or ejection.

Study your *Owner's Guide* and any supplements for specific information about equipment features, instructions for safe driving and additional precautions to reduce the risk of an accident or serious injury.

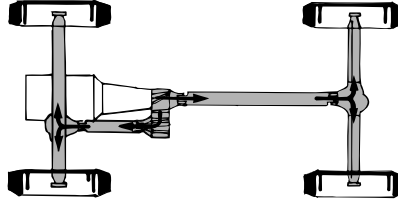
### VEHICLE CHARACTERISTICS

#### 4WD and AWD Systems (if equipped)

A vehicle equipped with AWD or 4WD has the ability to use all four wheels to power itself. This increases traction which may enable you to safely drive over terrain and road conditions that a conventional two-wheel drive vehicle cannot.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

Power is supplied to all four wheels through a transfer case or power transfer unit. Information on transfer case operation and shifting procedures can be found in the *Driving chapter*. Information on transfer case maintenance can be found in the *Maintenance and Specification chapter*. You should become thoroughly familiar with this information before you operate your vehicle.



On some 4WD models, the initial shift from two-wheel drive to 4WD while the vehicle is moving can cause a momentary clunk and ratcheting sound. These sounds are normal as the front drivetrain comes up to speed and is not cause for concern.

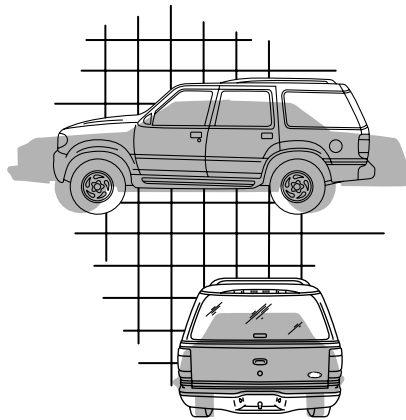


Do not become overconfident in the ability of 4WD and AWD vehicles. Although a 4WD or AWD vehicle may accelerate better than two-wheel drive vehicle in low traction situations, it won't stop any faster than two-wheel drive vehicles. Always drive at a safe speed.

### How your vehicle differs from other vehicles

SUV and trucks can differ from some other vehicles in a few noticeable ways. Your vehicle may be:

- Higher – to allow higher load carrying capacity and to allow it to travel over rough terrain without getting hung up or damaging underbody components.
- Shorter – to give it the capability to approach inclines and drive over the crest of a hill without getting hung up or damaging underbody components. All other things held equal, a shorter wheelbase may make your vehicle quicker to respond to steering inputs than a vehicle with a longer wheelbase.

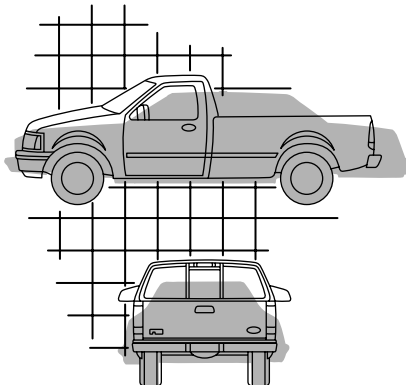


## Tires, Wheels and Loading

- Narrower — to provide greater maneuverability in tight spaces, particularly in off-road use.

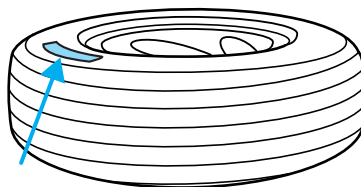
As a result of the above dimensional differences, SUV's and trucks often will have a higher center of gravity and a greater difference in center of gravity between the loaded and unloaded condition.

These differences that make your vehicle so versatile also make it handle differently than an ordinary passenger car.



### INFORMATION ABOUT UNIFORM TIRE QUALITY GRADING

New vehicles are fitted with tires that have a rating on them called Tire Quality Grades. The Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width. For example:



- **Treadwear 200 Traction AA Temperature A**

These Tire Quality Grades are determined by standards that the United States Department of Transportation has set.

Tire Quality Grades apply to new pneumatic tires for use on passenger cars. They do not apply to deep tread, winter-type snow tires, space-saver or temporary use spare tires, tires with nominal rim diameters of 10 to 12 inches or limited production tires as defined in Title 49 Code of Federal Regulations Part 575.104(c)(2).

**U.S. Department of Transportation-Tire quality grades:** The U.S. Department of Transportation requires Ford Motor Company to give you the following information about tire grades exactly as the government has written it.

#### Treadwear

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half (1 1/2) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices, and differences in road characteristics and climate.

### Traction AA A B C

The traction grades, from highest to lowest are AA, A, B, and C. The grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.



The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning or peak traction characteristics.

### Temperature A B C

The temperature grades are A (the highest), B and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.



The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

## TIRES

Tires are designed to give many thousands of miles of service, but they must be maintained in order to get the maximum benefit from them.

### Glossary of tire terminology

- **Tire label:** A label showing the OE (Original Equipment) tire sizes, recommended inflation pressure and the maximum weight the vehicle can carry.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

- **Tire Identification Number (TIN):** A number on the sidewall of each tire providing information about the tire brand and manufacturing plant, tire size and date of manufacture. Also referred to as DOT code.
- **Inflation pressure:** A measure of the amount of air in a tire.
- **Standard load:** A class of P-metric or Metric tires designed to carry a maximum load at 35 psi [37 psi (2.5 bar) for Metric tires]. Increasing the inflation pressure beyond this pressure will not increase the tire's load carrying capability.
- **Extra load:** A class of P-metric or Metric tires designed to carry a heavier maximum load at 41 psi [43 psi (2.9 bar) for Metric tires]. Increasing the inflation pressure beyond this pressure will not increase the tire's load carrying capability.
- **kPa:** Kilopascal, a metric unit of air pressure.
- **PSI:** Pounds per square inch, a standard unit of air pressure.
- **Cold inflation pressure:** The tire pressure when the vehicle has been stationary and out of direct sunlight for an hour or more and prior to the vehicle being driven for 1 mile (1.6 km).
- **Recommended inflation pressure:** The cold inflation pressure found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label or Tire Label located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door.
- **B-pillar:** The structural member at the side of the vehicle behind the front door.
- **Bead area of the tire:** Area of the tire next to the rim.
- **Sidewall of the tire:** Area between the bead area and the tread.
- **Tread area of the tire:** Area of the perimeter of the tire that contacts the road when mounted on the vehicle.
- **Rim:** The metal support (wheel) for a tire or a tire and tube assembly upon which the tire beads are seated.

### INFLATING YOUR TIRES

Safe operation of your vehicle requires that your tires are properly inflated. Remember that a tire can lose up to half of its air pressure without appearing flat.

Every day before you drive, check your tires. If one looks lower than the others, use a tire gauge to check pressure of all tires and adjust if required.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

At least once a month and before long trips, inspect each tire and check the tire pressure with a tire gauge (including spare, if equipped). Inflate all tires to the inflation pressure recommended by Ford Motor Company.

Use a tire gauge to check the tire inflation pressure, including the spare (if equipped), at least monthly and before long trips. You are strongly urged to buy a reliable tire pressure gauge, as automatic service station gauges may be inaccurate. Ford recommends the use of a digital or dial-type tire pressure gauge rather than a stick-type tire pressure gauge.

Use the recommended cold inflation pressure for optimum tire performance and wear. Under-inflation or over-inflation may cause uneven treadwear patterns.



Under-inflation is the most common cause of tire failures and may result in severe tire cracking, tread separation or "blowout", with unexpected loss of vehicle control and increased risk of injury. Under-inflation increases sidewall flexing and rolling resistance, resulting in heat buildup and internal damage to the tire. It also may result in unnecessary tire stress, irregular wear, loss of vehicle control and accidents. A tire can lose up to half of its air pressure and not appear to be flat!

Always inflate your tires to the Ford recommended inflation pressure even if it is less than the maximum inflation pressure information found on the tire. The Ford recommended tire inflation pressure is found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label or Tire Label which is located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door. Failure to follow the tire pressure recommendations can cause uneven treadwear patterns and adversely affect the way your vehicle handles.

**Maximum Permissible Inflation Pressure** is the tire manufacturer's maximum permissible pressure and/or the pressure at which the maximum load can be carried by the tire. This pressure is normally higher than the manufacturer's recommended cold inflation pressure which can be found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label or Tire Label which is located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door. The cold inflation pressure should never be set lower than the recommended pressure on the Safety Compliance Certification Label or Tire Label.

When weather temperature changes occur, tire inflation pressures also change. A 10° F (6° C) temperature drop can cause a corresponding drop of 1 psi (7 kPa) in inflation pressure. Check your tire pressures frequently and adjust them to the proper pressure which can be found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label or Tire Label.



## Tires, Wheels and Loading

If you are checking tire pressure when the tire is hot, (i.e. driven more than 1 mile [1.6 km]), never “bleed” or reduce air pressure. The tires are hot from driving and it is normal for pressures to increase above recommended cold pressures. A hot tire at or below recommended cold inflation pressure could be significantly under-inflated.

To check the pressure in your tire(s):

1. Make sure the tires are cool, meaning they are not hot from driving even a mile.

**Note:** If you have to drive a distance to get air for your tire(s), check and record the tire pressure first and add the appropriate air pressure when you get to the pump. It is normal for tires to heat up and the air pressure inside to go up as you drive. Never “bleed” or reduce air pressure when tires are hot.

2. Remove the cap from the valve on one tire, then firmly press the tire gauge onto the valve and measure the pressure.
3. Add enough air to reach the recommended air pressure

**Note:** If you overfill the tire, release air by pushing on the metal stem in the center of the valve. Then recheck the pressure with your tire gauge.

4. Replace the valve cap.
5. Repeat this procedure for each tire, including the spare.

**Note:** Some spare tires operate at a higher inflation pressure than the other tires. For T-type/mini-spare tires (see *T-Type/Mini-Spare Tire Information* section for description): Store and maintain at 60psi (4.15 bars). For Full Size and Dissimilar spare tires (see *Dissimilar Spare Tire/Wheel Information* section for description): Store and maintain at the higher of the front and rear inflation pressure as shown on the Tire Label.

6. Visually inspect the tires to make sure there are no nails or other objects embedded that could poke a hole in the tire and cause an air leak.
7. Check the sidewalls to make sure there are no gouges, cuts or bulges.

### TIRE CARE

#### Inspecting your tires

Periodically inspect the tire treads for uneven or excessive wear and remove objects such as stones, nails or glass that may be wedged in the tread grooves. Check for holes or cuts that may permit air leakage from

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

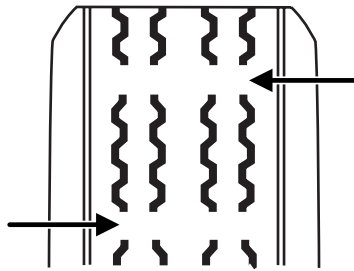
the tire and make necessary repairs. Also inspect the tire sidewalls for cracking, cuts, bruises and other signs of damage or excessive wear. If internal damage to the tire is suspected, have the tire demounted and inspected in case it needs to be repaired or replaced. For your safety, tires that are damaged or show signs of excessive wear should not be used because they are more likely to blow out or fail.

Improper or inadequate vehicle maintenance can cause tires to wear abnormally. Inspect all your tires, including the spare, frequently, and replace them if one or more of the following conditions exist:

### Tire wear

When the tread is worn down to 1/16th of an inch (2 mm), tires must be replaced to help prevent your vehicle from skidding and hydroplaning. Built-in treadwear indicators, or “wear bars”, which look like narrow strips of smooth rubber across the tread will appear on the tire when the tread is worn down to 1/16th of an inch (2 mm).

When the tire tread wears down to the same height as these “wear bars”, the tire is worn out and must be replaced.



### Damage

Periodically inspect the tire treads and sidewalls for damage (such as bulges in the tread or sidewalls, cracks in the tread groove and separation in the tread or sidewall). If damage is observed or suspected have the tire inspected by a tire professional. Tires can be damaged during off-road use, so inspection after off-road use is also recommended.



### Age

Tires degrade over time, even when they are not being used. It is recommended that tires generally be replaced after 6 years of normal service. Heat caused by hot climates or frequent high loading conditions can accelerate the aging process.

You should replace the spare tire when you replace the other road tires due to the aging of the spare tire.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

### U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number (TIN)

Both U.S. and Canada Federal regulations require tire manufacturers to place standardized information on the sidewall of all tires. This information identifies and describes the fundamental characteristics of the tire and also provides a U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number for safety standard certification and in case of a recall.

This begins with the letters "DOT" and indicates that the tire meets all federal standards. The next two numbers or letters are the plant code designating where it was manufactured, the next two are the tire size code and the last four numbers represent the week and year the tire was built. For example, the numbers 317 mean the 31st week of 1997. After 2000 the numbers go to four digits. For example, 2501 means the 25th week of 2001. The numbers in between are identification codes used for traceability. This information is used to contact customers if a tire defect requires a recall.

### Tire Replacement Requirements

Your vehicle is equipped with tires designed to provide a safe ride and handling capability.



Only use replacement tires and wheels that are the same size and type (such as P-metric versus LT-metric or all-season versus all-terrain) as those originally provided by Ford. Use of any tire or wheel not recommended by Ford can affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death. Additionally the use of non-recommended tires and wheels could cause steering, suspension, axle or transfer case/power transfer unit failure. If you have questions regarding tire replacement, see an authorized dealer.

**Important:** Remember to replace the wheel valve stems when the road tires are replaced on your vehicle.

It is recommended that the two front tires or two rear tires generally be replaced as a pair.

The tire pressure sensors mounted in the wheels (originally installed on your vehicle) are not designed to be used in aftermarket wheels.

The installation of replacement tires with steel cord body plies in the tire sidewall may cause malfunction of the Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS), and is not recommended (cord material information is molded

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

on the tire sidewall). Additionally, if your vehicle was originally equipped with run-flat tires, replacing them with tires that are not identical to those originally fitted may cause malfunction of the TPMS, and is not recommended. Run-flat tires should not be used to replace regular tires. Always check your TPMS indicator immediately after replacing one or more tires on your vehicle. If the TPMS indicator is flashing, your TPMS is malfunctioning. Your replacement tire might be incompatible with your TPMS, or some component of the TPMS may be damaged.

### Safety practices

Driving habits have a great deal to do with your tire mileage and safety.

- Observe posted speed limits
- Avoid fast starts, stops and turns
- Avoid potholes and objects on the road
- Do not run over curbs or hit the tire against a curb when parking



If your vehicle is stuck in snow, mud, sand, etc., **do not** rapidly spin the tires; spinning the tires can tear the tire and cause an explosion. A tire can explode in as little as three to five seconds.



Never spin the tires in excess of the 35 mph (55 km/h) point indicated on the speedometer.

### Highway hazards

No matter how carefully you drive there's always the possibility that you may eventually have a flat tire on the highway. Drive slowly to the closest safe area out of traffic. This may further damage the flat tire, but your safety is more important.

If you feel a sudden vibration or ride disturbance while driving, or you suspect your tire or vehicle has been damaged, immediately reduce your speed. Drive with caution until you can safely pull off the road. Stop and inspect the tires for damage. If a tire is under-inflated or damaged, deflate it, remove wheel and replace it with your spare tire and wheel. If you cannot detect a cause, have the vehicle towed to the nearest repair facility or tire dealer to have the vehicle inspected.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

### Tire and wheel alignment

A bad jolt from hitting a curb or pothole can cause the front end of your vehicle to become misaligned or cause damage to your tires. If your vehicle seems to pull to one side when you're driving, the wheels may be out of alignment. Have an authorized dealer check the wheel alignment periodically.

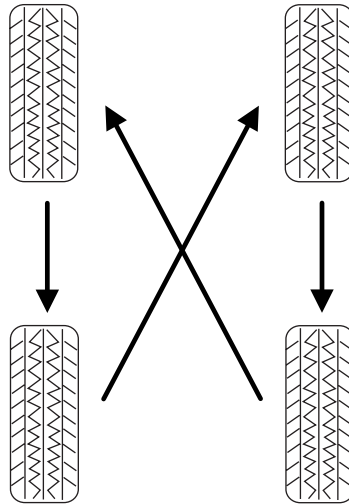
Wheel misalignment in the front or the rear can cause uneven and rapid treadwear of your tires and should be corrected by an authorized dealer. Front wheel drive (FWD) vehicles and those with an independent rear suspension (if equipped) may require alignment of all four wheels.

The tires should also be balanced periodically. An unbalanced tire and wheel assembly may result in irregular tire wear.

### Tire rotation

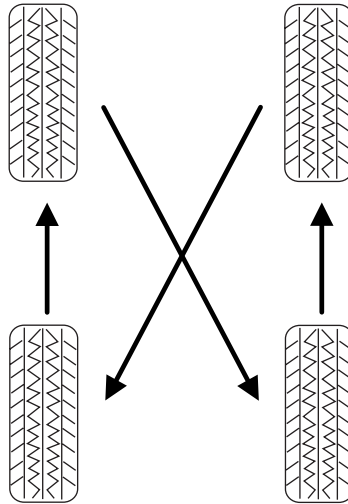
Rotating your tires at the recommended interval (as indicated in the *scheduled maintenance information* that comes with your vehicle) will help your tires wear more evenly, providing better tire performance and longer tire life. Unless otherwise specified, rotate the tires approximately every 5,000 miles (8,000 km).

- Front Wheel Drive (FWD) vehicles (front tires at top of diagram)



## Tires, Wheels and Loading

- Rear Wheel Drive (RWD) vehicles/Four Wheel Drive (4WD)/ All Wheel Drive (AWD) vehicles (front tires at top of diagram)



Sometimes irregular tire wear can be corrected by rotating the tires.

**Note:** If your tires show uneven wear ask an authorized dealer to check for and correct any wheel misalignment, tire imbalance or mechanical problem involved before tire rotation.

**Note:** Your vehicle may be equipped with a dissimilar spare tire/wheel. A dissimilar spare tire/wheel is defined as a spare tire and/or wheel that is different in brand, size or appearance from the road tires and wheels. If you have a dissimilar spare tire/wheel it is intended for temporary use only and should not be used in a tire rotation.

**Note:** After having your tires rotated, inflation pressure must be checked and adjusted to the vehicle requirements.

### INFORMATION CONTAINED ON THE TIRE SIDEWALL

Both U.S. and Canada Federal regulations require tire manufacturers to place standardized information on the sidewall of all tires. This information identifies and describes the fundamental characteristics of the tire and also provides a U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number for safety standard certification and in case of a recall.

150

2006 Escape (204)  
Owners Guide (post-2002-fmt)  
USA (fus)

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

### Information on “P” type tires

P215/65R15 95H is an example of a tire size, load index and speed rating. The definitions of these items are listed below. (Note that the tire size, load index and speed rating for your vehicle may be different from this example.)

1. **P:** Indicates a tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association (T&RA), that may be used for service on cars, SUVs, minivans and light trucks.

**Note:** If your tire size does not begin with a letter this may mean it is designated by either ETRTO (European Tire and Rim Technical Organization) or JATMA (Japan Tire Manufacturing Association).

2. **215:** Indicates the nominal width of the tire in millimeters from sidewall edge to sidewall edge. In general, the larger the number, the wider the tire.

3. **65:** Indicates the aspect ratio which gives the tire's ratio of height to width.

4. **R:** Indicates a “radial” type tire.

5. **15:** Indicates the wheel or rim diameter in inches. If you change your wheel size, you will have to purchase new tires to match the new wheel diameter.

6. **95:** Indicates the tire's load index. It is an index that relates to how much weight a tire can carry. You may find this information in your *Owner's Guide*. If not, contact a local tire dealer.

**Note:** You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by federal law.

7. **H:** Indicates the tire's speed rating. The speed rating denotes the speed at which a tire is designed to be driven for extended periods of time under a standard condition of load and inflation pressure. The tires on your vehicle may operate at different conditions for load and inflation pressure. These speed ratings may need to be adjusted for the difference in conditions. The ratings range from 81 mph (130 km/h) to 186 mph (299 km/h). These ratings are listed in the following chart.



## Tires, Wheels and Loading

**Note:** You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by federal law.

Letter rating	Speed rating - mph (km/h)
M	81 mph (130 km/h)
N	87 mph (140 km/h)
Q	99 mph (159 km/h)
R	106 mph (171 km/h)
S	112 mph (180 km/h)
T	118 mph (190 km/h)
U	124 mph (200 km/h)
H	130 mph (210 km/h)
V	149 mph (240 km/h)
W	168 mph (270 km/h)
Y	186 mph (299 km/h)

**Note:** For tires with a maximum speed capability over 149 mph (240 km/h), tire manufacturers sometimes use the letters ZR. For those with a maximum speed capability over 186 mph (299 km/h), tire manufacturers always use the letters ZR.

**8. U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number (TIN):** This begins with the letters "DOT" and indicates that the tire meets all federal standards. The next two numbers or letters are the plant code designating where it was manufactured, the next two are the tire size code and the last four numbers represent the week and year the tire was built. For example, the numbers 317 mean the 31st week of 1997. After 2000 the numbers go to four digits. For example, 2501 means the 25th week of 2001. The numbers in between are identification codes used for traceability. This information is used to contact customers if a tire defect requires a recall.

**9. M+S or M/S:** Mud and Snow, or

**AT:** All Terrain, or

**AS:** All Season.

**10. Tire Ply Composition and Material Used:** Indicates the number of plies or the number of layers of rubber-coated fabric in the tire tread and sidewall. Tire manufacturers also must indicate the ply materials in the tire and the sidewall, which include steel, nylon, polyester, and others.

**11. Maximum Load:** Indicates the maximum load in kilograms and pounds that can be carried by the tire. Refer to the Safety Compliance Certification Label, which is located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door, for the correct tire pressure for your vehicle.



## Tires, Wheels and Loading

### 12. Treadwear, Traction and Temperature Grades

- **Treadwear:** The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half ( $1\frac{1}{2}$ ) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100.
- **Traction:** The traction grades, from highest to lowest are AA, A, B, and C. The grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.
- **Temperature:** The temperature grades are A (the highest), B and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel.

13. **Maximum Permissible Inflation Pressure:** Indicates the tire manufacturers' maximum permissible pressure and/or the pressure at which the maximum load can be carried by the tire. This pressure is normally higher than the manufacturer's recommended cold inflation pressure which can be found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label or Tire Label which is located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door. The cold inflation pressure should never be set lower than the recommended pressure on the vehicle label.

The tire suppliers may have additional markings, notes or warnings such as standard load, radial tubeless, etc.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

### Additional information contained on the tire sidewall for “LT” type tires

“LT” type tires have some additional information beyond those of “P” type tires; these differences are described below:

1. **LT:** Indicates a tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association (T&RA), that is intended for service on light trucks.

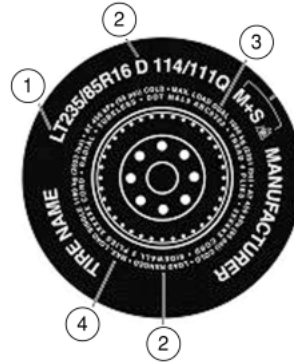
2. **Load Range/Load Inflation**

**Limits:** Indicates the tire's load-carrying capabilities and its inflation limits.

3. **Maximum Load Dual lb. (kg)**

**at psi (kPa) cold:** Indicates the maximum load and tire pressure when the tire is used as a dual; defined as four tires on the rear axle (a total of six or more tires on the vehicle).

4. **Maximum Load Single lb. (kg) at psi (kPa) cold:** Indicates the maximum load and tire pressure when the tire is used as a single; defined as two tires (total) on the rear axle.



## Tires, Wheels and Loading

### Information on “T” type tires

“T” type tires have some additional information beyond those of “P” type tires; these differences are described below:

T145/80D16 is an example of a tire size.

**Note:** The temporary tire size for your vehicle may be different from this example.

1. **T:** Indicates a type of tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association (T&RA), that is intended for temporary service on cars, SUVs, minivans and light trucks.

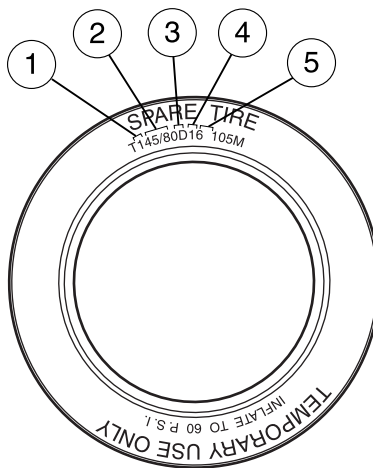
2. **145:** Indicates the nominal width of the tire in millimeters from sidewall edge to sidewall edge. In general, the larger the number, the wider the tire.

3. **80:** Indicates the aspect ratio which gives the tire's ratio of height to width. Numbers of 70 or lower indicate a short sidewall.

4. **D:** Indicates a “diagonal” type tire.

**R:** Indicates a “radial” type tire.

5. **16:** Indicates the wheel or rim diameter in inches. If you change your wheel size, you will have to purchase new tires to match the new wheel diameter.



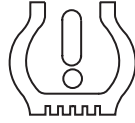
### Location of the tire label

You will find a Tire Label containing tire inflation pressure by tire size and other important information located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door. Refer to the payload description and graphic in the *Vehicle loading — with and without a trailer* section.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

### TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM (TPMS)

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.)



As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

The Tire Pressure Monitoring System complies with part 15 of the FCC rules and with RS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.



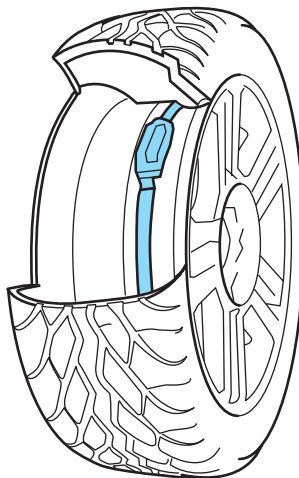
The Tire Pressure Monitoring System is NOT a substitute for manually checking tire pressure. The tire pressure should be checked periodically (at least monthly) using a tire gauge, see *Inflating your tires* in this chapter. Failure to properly maintain your tire pressure could increase the risk of tire failure, loss of control, vehicle rollover and personal injury.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

### Changing tires with TPMS

**Each road tire is equipped with a tire pressure sensor fastened to the inside rim of the wheel. The pressure sensor is covered by the tire and is not visible unless the tire is removed. The pressure sensor is located opposite (180 degrees) from the valve stem. Care must be taken when changing the tire to avoid damaging the sensor.** It is recommended that you always have your tires serviced by an authorized dealer.

The tire pressure should be checked periodically (at least monthly) using an accurate tire gauge, refer to *Inflating your tires* in this chapter.



### Understanding your Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

The Tire Pressure Monitoring System measures pressure in your four road tires and sends the tire pressure readings to your vehicle every minute while you are driving and once every 6 hours when your vehicle is parked. The Low Tire Warning Lamp will turn ON if the tire pressure is 25% below the pressure listed on the Safety Compliance Certification Label (approximately 6 to 9 psi below the manufacturer's recommended tire pressure). If the tire pressure increases 2 psi above the "Light ON" threshold, then the TPMS light will turn OFF. Once the light is illuminated, your tires are under inflated and need to be inflated to the manufacturer's recommended tire pressure. Even if the light turns ON and a short time later turns OFF, your tire pressure still needs to be checked.

In short, once the light has turned ON, at least one tire may be under inflated.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

### ***When your temporary spare tire is installed (if equipped)***

When one of your road tires needs to be replaced with the temporary spare (T-type spare/Mini spare or Dissimilar spare), the TPMS system will continue to identify an issue to remind you that the damaged road wheel/tire needs to be repaired and put back on your vehicle. During this time, the low tire warning light can periodically return or stay on, depending on the state of the damaged road wheel/tire. This will include messages from the message center (if equipped).

To restore the full functionality of the Tire Pressure Monitoring System, have the damaged road wheel/tire repaired and remounted on your vehicle. For additional information, refer to *Changing tires with TPMS* in this section.

### ***When you believe your system is not operating properly***

The main function of the Tire Pressure Monitoring System is to warn you when your tires need air. It can also warn you in the event the system is no longer capable of functioning as intended. Please refer to the following chart for information concerning your Tire Pressure Monitoring System:

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

Low Tire Pressure Warning Light	Possible cause	Customer Action Required
Solid Warning Light	Tire(s) under-inflated	<p>1. Check your tire pressure to ensure they are properly inflated; refer to <i>Inflating your tires</i> in this chapter. Ford Motor Company recommends the use of a digital or dial-type tire pressure gauge rather than a stick-type tire pressure gauge for increased accuracy.</p> <p>2. After inflating your tires to the manufacturer's recommended inflation pressure shown on the Safety Compliance Certification Label (located on the edge of driver's door or the B-Pillar) the vehicle must be driven for at least two minutes over 20 mph (32 km/h) before the light will turn OFF.</p>
	Spare tire in use	Your temporary spare tire is in use. Repair the damaged road wheel/tire and reinstall it on the vehicle to restore system functionality. For a description on how the system functions, refer to <i>Changing Tires with TPMS</i> in this section.
	TPMS malfunction	If your tires are properly inflated and your spare tire is not in use and the light remains ON, have the system inspected by your authorized dealer.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

Low Tire Pressure Warning Light	Possible cause	Customer Action Required
Flashing Warning Light (flashes for a short time either at start-up or while driving)	Spare tire in use	Your temporary spare tire is in use. Repair the damaged road wheel and re-mount it on the vehicle to restore system functionality. For a description of how the system functions under these conditions, refer to <i>Changing tires with TPMS</i> in this section.
	TPMS malfunction	If your tires are properly inflated and your spare tire is not in use and a flashing TPMS warning light is still present, have the system inspected by your authorized dealer.

### When inflating your tires

When putting air into your tires (such as at a gas station or in your garage), the Tire Pressure Monitoring System may not respond immediately to the air added to your tires. Here are the details:

- The tire pressure sensors mounted in your wheels updates your vehicle with tire pressure information only once every minute, therefore it may take up to two minutes of driving over 20 mph (32 km/h) for the light to turn OFF after you have filled your tires to the recommended tire pressure.
- If your vehicle has been parked for over 30 minutes, the sensors go into a low power mode to conserve battery life and therefore only transmit about once every 6 hours. If you inflate your tires under these conditions, it may take up to two minutes of driving over 20 mph (32 km/h) for the light to turn OFF after you have filled your tires to the recommended tire pressure.

For these reasons, the low tire pressure warning light is NOT a substitute for using an accurate tire gauge when checking and filling your tires.



## Tires, Wheels and Loading

### ***How temperature affects your tire pressure***

The Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) monitors tire pressure in each pneumatic tire. The pressure in each tire is dependent upon several factors, one of them being the contained air temperature (temperature of the air inside the tire). As the contained air temperature increases, the tire pressure also increases. While driving in a normal manner, a typical passenger tire inflation pressure may increase approximately 2 to 4 psi (14 to 28 kPa) from a cold start situation. This increase in tire pressure is due to an increase in the contained air temperature. Contained air temperature is dependent upon several factors such as rate of tire rotation, tire deflection, amount of braking, etc. In a similar manner, the tire pressure will decrease if the contained air temperature decreases. For example, if the vehicle is stationary over night with the outside temperature significantly lower than the daytime temperature, the tire pressure may decrease approximately 3 psi (20.7 kPa) for a drop of 30° F (16.6° C) in ambient temperature. This lower pressure value may be detected by the TPMS as being significantly lower than the cold pressure indicated on your vehicles Safety Compliance Certification Label, and activate the TPMS warning for low tire pressure. If the low tire pressure warning light is ON, visually check each tire to verify that no tire is flat. If one or more tires are flat, repair as necessary. Check air pressure in the road tires. If any tire is underinflated, carefully drive the vehicle to the nearest location where air can be added to the tires. Turn the ignition to the OFF position. Inflate all the tires to the recommended inflation pressure.



The Tire Pressure Monitoring System is NOT a substitute for manually checking tire pressure. The tire pressure should be checked periodically (at least monthly) using an accurate tire gauge, see *Inflating your tires* in this chapter. Failure to properly maintain your tire pressure could increase the risk of tire failure, loss of control, vehicle rollover and personal injury.

### **USING SNOW TIRES AND TRACTION DEVICES**



Snow tires must be the same size and grade as the tires you currently have on your vehicle.

The tires on your vehicle have all-weather treads to provide traction in rain and snow. However, in some climates, using snow tires or traction devices may be necessary.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

Follow these guidelines when using snow tires and traction devices:

- SAE class “S” cables should ONLY be used on the front axle for P235/70R16 tires. With P225/75R15 and P215/70R16 tires, SAE class “S” cables can be used on both the front and rear wheels.
- Install cables or chains securely, verifying that the cables or chains do not touch any wiring, brake lines or fuel lines.
- Drive cautiously. If you hear the cables or chains rub or bang against the vehicle, stop and retighten them. If this does not work, remove the cables or chains to prevent vehicle damage.
- Avoid overloading your vehicle.
- Remove the cables or chains when they are no longer needed.
- Do not use cables or chains on dry roads.
- Do not exceed 30 mph (48 km/h) with tire cables or chains on your vehicle.

Consult your authorized dealer for information on other Ford Motor Company approved methods of traction control.

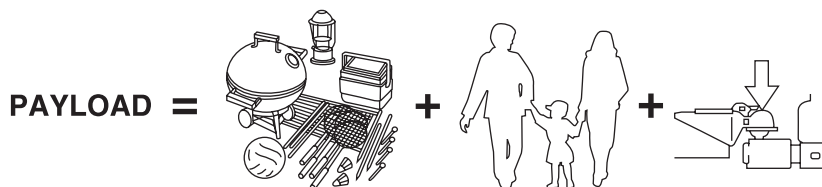
### VEHICLE LOADING – WITH AND WITHOUT A TRAILER

This section will guide you in the proper loading of your vehicle and/or trailer, to keep your loaded vehicle weight within its design rating capability, with or without a trailer. Properly loading your vehicle will provide maximum return of vehicle design performance. Before loading your vehicle, familiarize yourself with the following terms for determining your vehicle's weight ratings, with or without a trailer, from the vehicle's Safety Compliance Certification Label:

**Base Curb Weight** – is the weight of the vehicle including a full tank of fuel and all standard equipment. It does not include passengers, cargo, or optional equipment.

**Vehicle Curb Weight** – is the weight of your new vehicle when you picked it up from your authorized dealer plus any aftermarket equipment.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading



**Payload** – is the combined weight of cargo and passengers that the vehicle is carrying. The maximum payload for your vehicle can be found on the Tire Label on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door (vehicles exported outside the US and Canada may not have a Tire Label). Look for **“THE COMBINED WEIGHT OF OCCUPANTS AND CARGO SHOULD NEVER EXCEED XXX kg OR XXX lb.”** for maximum payload. The payload listed on the Tire Label is the maximum payload for the vehicle as built by the assembly plant. If any aftermarket or authorized-dealer installed equipment has been installed on the vehicle, the weight of the equipment must be subtracted from the payload listed on the Tire Label in order to determine the new payload.



The appropriate loading capacity of your vehicle can be limited either by volume capacity (how much space is available) or by payload capacity (how much weight the vehicle should carry). Once you have reached the maximum payload of your vehicle, do not add more cargo, even if there is space available. Overloading or improperly loading your vehicle can contribute to loss of vehicle control and vehicle rollover.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

**Example only:**

TIRE AND LOADING INFORMATION			
SEATING CAPACITY		TOTAL 5	FRONT 2 REAR 3
The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed : XXX kg or XXX lbs.			
TIRE	SIZE	COLD TIRE PRESSURE	SEE OWNERS MANUAL FOR ADDITIONAL INFORMATION
FRONT	LT225/75R 16.5E	200 KPA, 29 PSI	
REAR	LT225/75R 16.5E	200 KPA, 29 PSI	
SPARE	T145/80D16 P225/60R17	420 KPA, 60 PSI 200 KPA, 29 PSI	

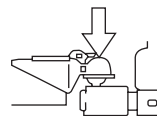
TIRE AND LOAD INFORMATION			
SEATING CAPACITY		TOTAL XX	FRONT XX REAR X
NOMBRE DE PLACES		TOTAL XX	AVANT XX ARRIERE X
The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed : XXX kg. La charge du véhicule (occupants et bagages) ne doit jamais dépasser : XXX lbs.			
TIRE PNEUS	SIZE DIMENSIONS	COLD TIRE PRESSURE PRESSION A FROID	SEE OWNERS MANUAL FOR ADDITIONAL INFORMATION CONSULTER LE GUIDE DU PROPRIETAIRE POUR DE PLUS AMPLES RESEIGNEMENTS
FRONT/ AVANT	LT225/75R 16.5E	200 KPA, 29 PSI	
REAR/ ARRIERE	LT225/75R 16.5E	200 KPA, 29 PSI	
SPARE/ PNEU DE SECOURS	T145/80D16 P225/60R17	420 KPA, 60 PSI 200 KPA, 29 PSI	

**CARGO**

=



+



**Cargo Weight** – includes all weight added to the Base Curb Weight, including cargo and optional equipment. When towing, trailer tongue load or king pin weight is also part of cargo weight.

**GAW (Gross Axle Weight)** – is the total weight placed on each axle (front and rear) – including vehicle curb weight and all payload.

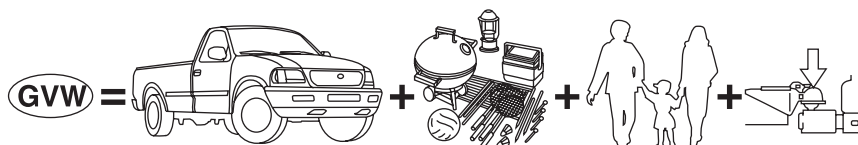
## Tires, Wheels and Loading

**GAWR (Gross Axle Weight Rating)** – is the maximum allowable weight that can be carried by a single axle (front or rear). **These numbers are shown on the Safety Compliance Certification Label located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door. The total load on each axle must never exceed its GAWR.**



Exceeding the Safety Compliance Certification Label axle weight rating limits could result in substandard vehicle handling or performance, engine, transmission and/or structural damage, serious damage to the vehicle, loss of control and personal injury.


**Note:** For trailer towing information refer to *Trailer towing* found in this chapter or the *RV and Trailer Towing Guide* provided by your authorized dealer.





**GVW (Gross Vehicle Weight)** – is the Vehicle Curb Weight + cargo + passengers.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

**GVWR (Gross Vehicle Weight Rating)** – is the maximum allowable weight of the fully loaded vehicle (including all options, equipment, passengers and cargo). **The GVWR is shown on the Safety Compliance Certification Label located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door. The GVW must never exceed the GVWR.**

Sample Safety Compliance Certification Label (Refer to actual label on your vehicle)			
Front GAWR	GVWR	Rear GAWR	
<b>MFD. BY FORD MOTOR CO. IN U.S.A.</b>			
DATE: 06/95	GVWR: 6250 LB/2834 KG		
FRONT GAWR: 3450 LB	REAR GAWR: 3777 LB		
1584KG	1713KG		
P265/75R15SL	WITH	P265/75R15SL	WITH
15X7.5J	TIRES	15X7.5J	TIRES
AT 30 PSI COLD	RIMS	AT 30 PSI COLD	RIMS
THIS VEHICLE CONFORMS TO ALL APPLICABLE FEDERAL MOTOR VEHICLE SAFETY STANDARDS IN EFFECT ON THE DATE OF MANUFACTURE SHOWN ABOVE.			
XXXXXXXXXXXX			
VIN: 1FTEX14H 0 SKB 00000		F0018	
TYPE: XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX		TC183	
			
EXT PNT: XXXXXX XXXXXX			
WD	TYPE-GVW	BODY	TRANS
155	REM	E	HBB
		TAPE	SPRINGS
			M4

 Exceeding the Safety Compliance Certification Label vehicle weight rating limits could result in substandard vehicle handling or performance, engine, transmission and/or structural damage, serious damage to the vehicle, loss of control and personal injury.

$$\text{GCW} = \text{GVW} + \text{Trailer}$$


**GCW (Gross Combined Weight)** – is the weight of the loaded vehicle (GVW) plus the weight of the fully loaded trailer.

**GCWR (Gross Combined Weight Rating)** – is the maximum allowable weight of the vehicle and the loaded trailer – including all cargo and passengers – that the vehicle can handle without risking damage.

(Important: The towing vehicle's braking system is rated for operation at GVWR, not at GCWR.) Separate functional brakes should be used for safe control of towed vehicles and for trailers where the GCW of the towing vehicle plus the trailer exceed the GVWR of the towing vehicle.

**The GCW must never exceed the GCWR.**

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

**Maximum Loaded Trailer Weight** – is the highest possible weight of a fully loaded trailer the vehicle can tow. It assumes a vehicle with only mandatory options, no cargo (internal or external), a tongue load of 10–15% (conventional trailer) or king pin weight of 15–25% (fifth wheel trailer), and driver only (150 lb. [68 kg]). **Consult your authorized dealer (or the *RV and Trailer Towing Guide* provided by your authorized dealer) for more detailed information.**

**Tongue Load or Fifth Wheel King Pin Weight** – refers to the amount of the weight that a trailer pushes down on a trailer hitch.

**Examples:** For a 5,000 lb. (2,268 kg) conventional trailer, multiply 5,000 by 0.10 and 0.15 to obtain a proper tongue load range of 500 to 750 lb. (227 to 340 kg). For an 11,500 lb. (5,216 kg) fifth wheel trailer, multiply by 0.15 and 0.25 to obtain a proper king pin load range of 1,725 to 2,875 lb. (782 to 1,304 kg)



Do not exceed the GVWR or the GAWR specified on the Safety Compliance Certification Label.



Do not use replacement tires with lower load carrying capacities than the originals because they may lower the vehicle's GVWR and GAWR limitations. Replacement tires with a higher limit than the originals do not increase the GVWR and GAWR limitations.



Exceeding any vehicle weight rating limitation could result in serious damage to the vehicle and/or personal injury.

### Steps for determining the correct load limit:

1. Locate the statement “The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lbs.” on your vehicle's placard.
2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lbs.
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the “XXX” amount equals 1,400 lbs. and there will be five 150 lb. passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs. (1400–750 (5 x 150) = 650 lb.). In metric units (635–340 (5 x 68) = 295 kg.)

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.

6. If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

The following gives you a few examples on how to calculate the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity:

- Another example for your vehicle with 1400 lb. (635 kg) of cargo and luggage capacity. You decide to go golfing. Is there enough load capacity to carry you, 4 of your friends and all the golf bags? You and four friends average 220 lb. (99 kg) each and the golf bags weigh approximately 30 lb. (13.5 kg) each. The calculation would be:  $1400 - (5 \times 220) - (5 \times 30) = 1400 - 1100 - 150 = 150$  lb. Yes, you have enough load capacity in your vehicle to transport four friends and your golf bags. In metric units, the calculation would be:  $635 \text{ kg} - (5 \times 99 \text{ kg}) - (5 \times 13.5 \text{ kg}) = 635 - 495 - 67.5 = 72.5$  kg.
- A final example for your vehicle with 1400 lb. (635 kg) of cargo and luggage capacity. You and one of your friends decide to pick up cement from the local home improvement store to finish that patio you have been planning for the past 2 years. Measuring the inside of the vehicle with the rear seat folded down, you have room for 12-100 lb. (45 kg) bags of cement. Do you have enough load capacity to transport the cement to your home? If you and your friend each weigh 220 lb. (99 kg), the calculation would be:  $1400 - (2 \times 220) - (12 \times 100) = 1400 - 440 - 1200 = -240$  lb. No, you do not have enough cargo capacity to carry that much weight. In metric units, the calculation would be:  $635 \text{ kg} - (2 \times 99 \text{ kg}) - (12 \times 45 \text{ kg}) = 635 - 198 - 540 = -103$  kg. You will need to reduce the load weight by at least 240 lb. (104 kg). If you remove 3-100 lb. (45 kg) cement bags, then the load calculation would be:  
 $1400 - (2 \times 220) - (9 \times 100) = 1400 - 440 - 900 = 60$  lb. Now you have the load capacity to transport the cement and your friend home. . In metric units, the calculation would be:  $635 \text{ kg} - (2 \times 99 \text{ kg}) - (9 \times 45 \text{ kg}) = 635 - 198 - 405 = 32$  kg.

The above calculations also assume that the loads are positioned in your vehicle in a manner that does not overload the Front or the Rear Gross Axle Weight Rating specified for your vehicle on the Safety Compliance Certification Label found on the edge of the driver's door.



## Tires, Wheels and Loading

### Special loading instructions for owners of pickup trucks and utility-type vehicles



For important information regarding safe operation of this type of vehicle, see the *Preparing to drive your vehicle* section in the *Driving* chapter of this *Owner's Guide*.



Loaded vehicles may handle differently than unloaded vehicles. Extra precautions, such as slower speeds and increased stopping distance, should be taken when driving a heavily loaded vehicle.

Your vehicle can haul more cargo and people than most passenger cars. Depending upon the type and placement of the load, hauling cargo and people may raise the center of gravity of the vehicle.

### TRAILER TOWING

Trailer towing with your vehicle may require the use of a trailer tow option package.

Trailer towing puts additional loads on your vehicle's engine, transaxle, axle, brakes, tires, and suspension. For your safety and to maximize vehicle performance, be sure to use the proper equipment while towing.

Follow these guidelines to ensure safe towing procedure:


- Stay within your vehicle's load limits.
- Thoroughly prepare your vehicle for towing. Refer to *Preparing to tow* in this chapter.
- Use extra caution when driving while trailer towing. Refer to *Driving while you tow* in this chapter.
- Service your vehicle more frequently if you tow a trailer. Refer to the severe duty schedule in the scheduled maintenance guide.
- Do not tow a trailer until your vehicle has been driven at least 800 km (500 miles).
- Refer to the instructions included with towing accessories for the proper installation and adjustment specifications.


Do not exceed the maximum loads listed on the Safety Compliance Certification Label. For load specification terms found on the label, refer to *Vehicle loading* in this chapter. Remember to figure in the tongue load of your loaded vehicle when figuring the total weight.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

4x2			
GCWR (Gross Combined Weight Rating)/Trailer Weights			
Engine	Maximum GCWR - lb. (kg)	Trailer Weight Range - lb. (kg)	Maximum frontal area of trailer - ft <sup>2</sup> (m) <sup>2</sup>
2.3L w/manual transmission	4860 (2204)	1500 (680)	24 (2.2)
2.3L w/automatic transmission	4940 (2241)	1500 (680)	24 (2.2 )
3.0L w/automatic transmission	7080 (3211 )	3500 (1588)	30 (2.8)
<p><b>Notes:</b> For high altitude operation, reduce GCW by 2% per 1000 ft. (300 meters) elevation. For definitions of terms and instructions on calculating your vehicle's load, refer to <i>Vehicle loading</i> in this chapter. Maximum trailer weights shown. The combined weight of the completed towing vehicle and the loaded trailer must not exceed the GCWR.</p> <p>The Escape is capable of pulling the maximum trailer weight(s) as specified above. Certain states require electric trailer brakes for trailers over a specified weight. The Escape vehicle electrical system is not equipped to accommodate electric trailer brakes.</p>			

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

4x4			
GCWR (Gross Combined Weight Rating)/Trailer Weights			
Engine	Maximum GCWR - lb. (kg)	Trailer Weight Range - lb. (kg)	Maximum frontal area of trailer - ft <sup>2</sup> (m) <sup>2</sup>
2.3L w/manual transmission	5040 (2286)	1500 (680)	24 (2.2)
2.3L w/automatic transmission	5100 (2313)	1500 (680 )	24 (2.2)
3.0L w/automatic transmission	7240 (3284 )	3500 (1588 )	30 (2.8)
<p><b>Notes:</b> For high altitude operation, reduce GCW by 2% per 1000 ft. (300 meters) elevation. For definitions of terms and instructions on calculating your vehicle's load, refer to <i>Vehicle loading</i> in this chapter. Maximum trailer weights shown. The combined weight of the completed towing vehicle and the loaded trailer must not exceed the GCWR.</p> <p>The Escape is capable of pulling the maximum trailer weight(s) as specified above. Certain states require electric trailer brakes for trailers over a specified weight. The Escape vehicle electrical system is not equipped to accommodate electric trailer brakes.</p>			
<p> Do not exceed the GVWR or the GAWR specified on the certification label.</p>			

 Towing trailers beyond the maximum recommended gross trailer weight exceeds the limit of the vehicle and could result in engine damage, transmission damage, structural damage, loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover and personal injury.

### Preparing to tow

Use the proper equipment for towing a trailer and make sure it is properly attached to your vehicle. See your authorized dealer or a reliable trailer dealer if you require assistance.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

### Hitches

Do not use hitches that clamp onto the vehicle bumper. Use a load carrying hitch. You must distribute the load in your trailer so that 10–15% of the total weight of the trailer is on the tongue.

### Safety chains

Always connect the trailer's safety chains to hook retainers on the vehicle. To connect the trailer's safety chains, cross the chains under the trailer tongue and allow slack for turning corners.

If you use a rental trailer, follow the instructions that the rental agency gives to you.

**Do not attach safety chains to the bumper.**

### Trailer brakes

Electric, manual, automatic or surge-type brakes, if compatible with the vehicle, are safe if installed properly and adjusted to the manufacturer's specifications. The trailer brakes must meet local and Federal regulations.



Do not connect a trailer's hydraulic brake system directly to your vehicle's brake system. Your vehicle may not have enough braking power and your chances of having a collision greatly increase.

The braking system of the tow vehicle is rated for operation at the GVWR not GCWR.

### Trailer lamps

Trailer lamps are required on most towed vehicles. Make sure all running lights, brake lights, turn signals and hazard lights are working. Do not connect trailer lamps directly to your vehicle's tail lamps. This can cause damage to your vehicle's electrical system. See your authorized dealer or trailer rental agency for proper instructions and equipment for hooking up trailer lamps.

### Driving while you tow

When towing a trailer:

- Keep your speed no faster than 70 mph (112 km/h) during the first 500 miles (800 km) of towing a trailer, and don't make full throttle starts.
- Turn off the speed control. The speed control may shut off automatically when you are towing on long, steep grades.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

- Consult your local motor vehicle speed regulations for towing a trailer.
- To eliminate excessive shifting, use a lower gear. This will also assist in transmission cooling. (For additional information, refer to *Understanding the gearshift positions of the 4-speed automatic transmission* in the *Driving* chapter.
- Anticipate stops and brake gradually.
- Do not exceed the GCWR rating or transmission damage may occur.

### **Servicing after towing**

If you tow a trailer for long distances, your vehicle will require more frequent service intervals. Refer to your *Scheduled Maintenance Information* for more information.

### **Trailer towing tips**

- Practice turning, stopping and backing up before starting on a trip to get the feel of the vehicle trailer combination. When turning, make wider turns so the trailer wheels will clear curbs and other obstacles.
- Allow more distance for stopping with a trailer attached.
- If you are driving down a long or steep hill, shift to a lower gear. Do not apply the brakes continuously, as they may overheat and become less effective.
- The trailer tongue weight should be 10–15% of the loaded trailer weight.
- If you will be towing a trailer frequently in hot weather, hilly conditions, at GCW, or any combination of these factors, consider refilling your rear axle with synthetic gear lube if not already so equipped. Refer to the *Maintenance and specifications* chapter for the lubricant specification. Remember that regardless of the rear axle lube used, do not tow a trailer for the first 500 miles (800 km) of a new vehicle, and that the first 500 miles (800 km) of towing be done at no faster than 70 mph (112 km/h) with no full throttle starts.
- After you have traveled 50 miles (80 km), thoroughly check your hitch, electrical connections and trailer wheel lug nuts.
- To aid in engine/transmission cooling and A/C efficiency during hot weather while stopped in traffic, place the gearshift lever in P (Park).
- Vehicles with trailers should not be parked on a grade. If you must park on a grade, place wheel chocks under the trailer's wheels.

## Tires, Wheels and Loading

### Launching or retrieving a boat

**Disconnect the wiring to the trailer before backing the trailer into the water. Reconnect the wiring to the trailer after the trailer is removed from the water.**

When backing down a ramp during boat launching or retrieval:

- do not allow the static water level to rise above the bottom edge of the rear bumper.
- do not allow waves to break higher than 6 inches (15 cm) above the bottom edge of the rear bumper.

Exceeding these limits may allow water to enter vehicle components:

- causing internal damage to the components.
- affecting driveability, emissions and reliability.

Replace the rear axle lubricant any time the axle has been submerged in water. Rear axle lubricant quantities are not to be checked or changed unless a leak is suspected or repair required.

### RECREATIONAL TOWING

An example of “recreational towing” is towing your vehicle behind a motorhome.

If your vehicle is automatic transaxle equipped, with a 4x2 (front-wheel drive only) configured powertrain, “recreational towing” is permitted by trailering the vehicle with its front wheels on a dolly. This protects the transmission’s internal mechanical components from potential lack of lubrication damage.

If your vehicle is automatic transaxle equipped and 4WD (all-wheel drive), “recreational towing” is permitted only if the vehicle is trailered with all four (4) wheels off the ground. Otherwise, no “recreational towing” is permitted.

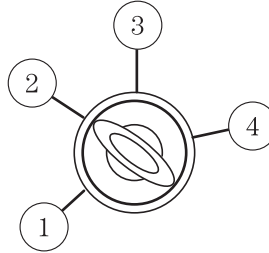
If your vehicle is manual transaxle equipped and 2WD or 4WD, shifting the transaxle into neutral permits “flat-towing” (all wheels on the ground) for pulling behind a motorhome. Your vehicle, with well designed towing equipment, may be towed up to a speed of 113 km/h (70 mph) but you should always obey local speed limits.

For other towing requirements, refer to *Wrecker towing* in the *Roadside Emergencies* chapter.

### STARTING

#### Positions of the ignition

1. LOCK, locks the gearshift lever and steering column and allows key removal.
2. ACCESSORY, allows the electrical accessories such as the radio to operate while the engine is not running.
3. RUN, all electrical circuits operational and warning lights will illuminate. This is the position the key is in when you're driving.
4. START, cranks the engine. Release the key as soon as the engine starts.



#### Preparing to start your vehicle

Engine starting is controlled by the powertrain control system. This system meets all Canadian Interference-Causing Equipment standard requirements regulating the impulse electrical field strength of radio noise.

When starting a fuel-injected engine, avoid pressing the accelerator before or during starting. Only use the accelerator when you have difficulty starting the engine. For more information on starting the vehicle, refer to *Starting the engine* in this chapter.



Extended idling at high engine speeds can produce very high temperatures in the engine and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire or other damage.




Do not park, idle, or drive your vehicle in dry grass or other dry ground cover. The emission system heats up the engine compartment and exhaust system, which can start a fire.



Do not start your vehicle in a closed garage or in other enclosed areas. Exhaust fumes can be toxic. Always open the garage door before you start the engine. See *Guarding against exhaust fumes* in this chapter for more instructions.

## Driving

 If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your dealer inspect your vehicle immediately. Do not drive if you smell exhaust fumes.

### **Important safety precautions**

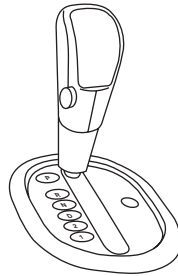
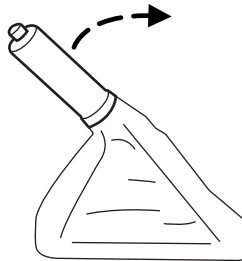
When the engine starts, the idle RPM runs faster to warm the engine. If the engine idle speed does not slow down automatically, have the vehicle checked.

Before starting the vehicle:

1. Make sure all vehicle occupants buckle their safety belts. For more information on safety belts and their proper usage, refer to the *Seating and Safety Restraints* chapter.
2. Make sure the headlamps and electrical accessories are off.

If starting a vehicle with an automatic transmission:

- Make sure the parking brake is set.
- Make sure the gearshift is in P (Park).

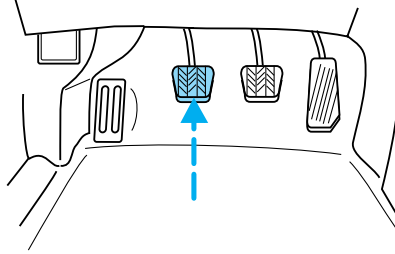




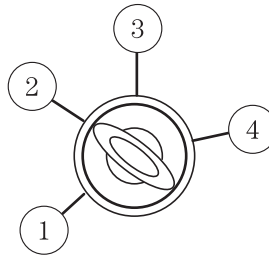
## Driving

If starting a vehicle with a manual transmission:

- Make sure the parking brake is set.
- Push the clutch pedal to the floor.



3. Turn the key to 3 (RUN) without turning the key to 4 (START).

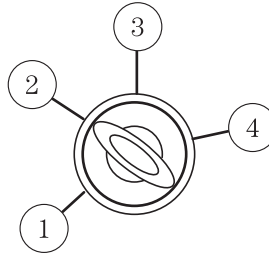


Some warning lights will briefly illuminate. See *Warning lights and chimes* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter for more information regarding the warning lights.

### Starting the engine

1. Turn the key to 3 (RUN) without turning the key to 4 (START). If there is difficulty in turning the key, rotate the steering wheel until the key turns freely. This condition may occur when:

- the front wheels are turned
- a front wheel is against the curb



Turn the key to 4 (START), then release the key as soon as the engine starts. Excessive cranking could damage the starter.

**Note:** If the engine does not start within five seconds on the first try, turn the key to 1 (LOCK), wait 10 seconds and try again. If the engine still fails to start, press the accelerator to the floor and try again; this will allow the engine to crank with the fuel shut off in case the engine is flooded with fuel.

## Driving

### Guarding against exhaust fumes

Carbon monoxide is present in exhaust fumes. Take precautions to avoid its dangerous effects.



If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your dealer inspect your vehicle immediately. Do not drive if you smell exhaust fumes.

### Important ventilating information

If the engine is idling while the vehicle is stopped for a long period of time, open the windows at least one inch (2.5 cm) or adjust the heating or air conditioning to bring in fresh air.

### USING THE ENGINE BLOCK HEATER (IF EQUIPPED)

An engine block heater warms the engine coolant which aids in starting and heater/defroster performance. Use of an engine block heater is strongly recommended if you live in a region where temperatures reach -10°F (-23°C) or below. For best results, plug the heater in at least three hours before starting the vehicle. The heater can be plugged in the night before starting the vehicle.



To reduce the risk of electrical shock, do not use your heater with ungrounded electrical systems or two-pronged (cheater) adapters.

### BRAKES

Occasional brake noise is normal. If a metal-to-metal, continuous grinding or continuous squeal sound is present, the brake linings may be worn-out and should be inspected by an authorized dealer. If the vehicle has continuous vibration or shudder in the steering wheel while braking, the vehicle should be inspected by an authorized dealer.

Refer to *Brake system warning light* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter for information on the brake system warning light.



**BRAKE**

Under normal operating conditions, brake dust may accumulate on the wheels. Some brake dust is inevitable as brakes wear and does not contribute to brake noise. The use of modern friction materials with emphasis on improved performance and environmental considerations can lead to more dust than in the past. Brake dust can be cleaned by weekly washing with soapy water and a soft sponge. Heavier deposits can be removed with Motorcraft Wheel and Tire Cleaner (ZC-37-A).

### **Four-wheel anti-lock brake system (ABS)**

Your vehicle is equipped with an Anti-lock Braking System (ABS). This system helps you maintain steering control during emergency stops by keeping the brakes from locking. Noise from the ABS pump motor and brake pedal pulsation may be observed during ABS braking and the brake pedal may suddenly travel a little farther as soon as ABS braking is done and normal brake operation resumes. These are normal characteristics of the ABS and should be no reason for concern.

### **Using ABS**

When hard braking is required, apply continuous force on the brake pedal; do not pump the brake pedal since this will reduce the effectiveness of the ABS and will increase your vehicle's stopping distance. The ABS will be activated immediately, allowing you to retain full steering control during hard braking and on slippery surfaces. However, the ABS does not decrease stopping distance.

### **ABS warning lamp**

The ABS lamp in the instrument cluster momentarily illuminates when the ignition is turned on. If the light does not illuminate during start up, remains on or flashes, the ABS may be disabled and may need to be serviced



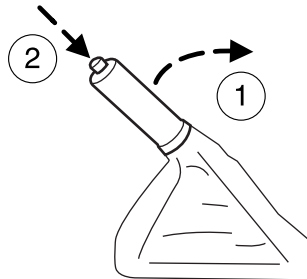
Even when the ABS is disabled, normal braking is still effective. (If your BRAKE warning lamp illuminates with the parking brake released, have your brake system serviced immediately.)



## Driving

### Parking brake

To set the parking brake (1), pull the parking brake handle up as far as possible.



The BRAKE warning lamp will illuminate and will remain illuminated until the parking brake is released.



To release, press and hold the button (2), pull the handle up slightly, then push the handle down.



Always set the parking brake fully and make sure that the gearshift is securely latched in P (Park) (automatic transmission) or in 1 (First) (manual transmission).



If the parking brake is fully released, but the brake warning lamp remains illuminated, the brakes may not be working properly. See your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

### STEERING

To prevent damage to the power steering system:

- Never hold the steering wheel at its furthest turning points (until it stops) for more than a few seconds when the engine is running
- Do not operate the vehicle with a low power steering pump fluid level (below the MIN mark on the reservoir).
- Some noise is normal during operation. If the noise is excessive, check for low power steering pump fluid level before seeking service by your authorized dealer.
- Heavy or uneven steering efforts may be caused by low power steering pump fluid level. Check for low power steering pump fluid level before seeking service by your authorized dealer.

## Driving

- Do not fill the power steering pump reservoir above the MAX mark on the reservoir, as this may result in leaks from the reservoir.

If the power steering system breaks down (or if the engine is turned off), you can steer the vehicle manually, but it takes more effort. If the steering wanders or pulls, check for:

- an improperly inflated tire
- uneven tire wear
- loose or worn suspension components
- loose or worn steering components
- improper steering alignment

### PREPARING TO DRIVE



Utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles.



In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a safety belt.

Your vehicle has larger tires and increased ground clearance, giving the vehicle a higher center of gravity than a passenger car.



Vehicles with a higher center of gravity such as utility and four-wheel drive vehicles handle differently than vehicles with a lower center of gravity. Utility and four-wheel drive vehicles are **not** designed for cornering at speeds as high as passenger cars any more than low-slung sports cars are designed to perform satisfactorily under off-road conditions. Avoid sharp turns, excessive speed and abrupt maneuvers in these vehicles. Failure to drive cautiously could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.



Loaded vehicles, with a higher center of gravity, may handle differently than unloaded vehicles. Extra precautions such as slower speeds and increased stopping distance should be taken when driving a heavily loaded vehicle.

## Driving

### AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION OPERATION (IF EQUIPPED)

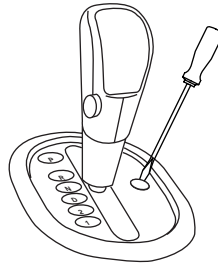
#### Brake-shift interlock

This vehicle is equipped with a brake-shift interlock feature that prevents the gearshift lever from being moved from P (Park) when the ignition is in the RUN position unless brake pedal is depressed.

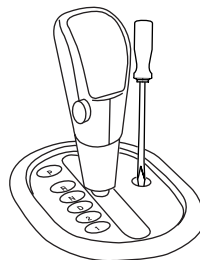
If you cannot move the gearshift lever out of P (Park) with ignition in the RUN position and the brake pedal depressed, it is possible that a fuse has blown or the vehicle's brakelamps are not operating properly. Refer to *Fuses and relays* in the *Roadside Emergencies* chapter.

If the fuse is not blown, perform the following procedure:

1. Apply the parking brake, turn the ignition to LOCK, then remove the key.
2. Using a screwdriver or similar tool, carefully pry out the small, round, tethered Brake Transmission Shift Interlock (BTSI) cover cap located to the right of the gearshift lever.



3. Insert a screwdriver or similar tool straight down into the access hole and press downward while pulling the gearshift lever out of the P (Park) position and into the N (Neutral) position.



4. Remove tool and reinstall BTSI tethered cover cap.

## Driving

5. Start the vehicle and release the parking brake.



Do not drive your vehicle until you verify that the brakelamps are working.



Always set the parking brake fully and make sure the gearshift is latched in P (Park). Turn the ignition to the LOCK position and remove the key whenever you leave your vehicle.

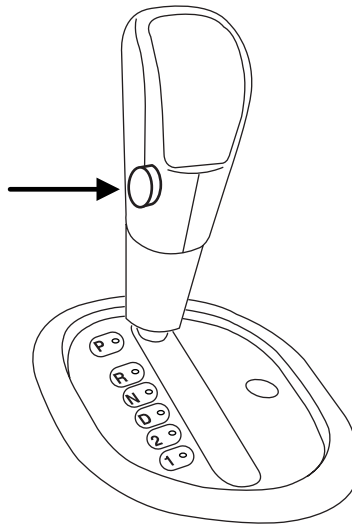


If the parking brake is fully released, but the brake warning lamp remains illuminated, the brakes may not be working properly. See your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

### Driving with an automatic overdrive transaxle

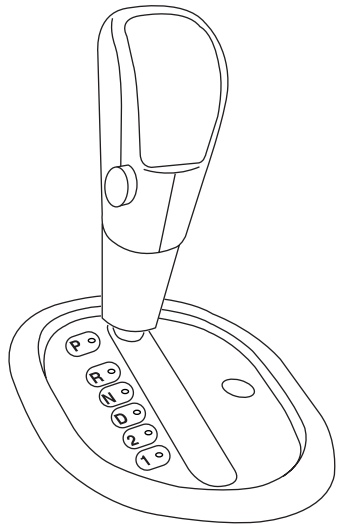
Your automatic overdrive transaxle provides fully automatic operation in either D (Overdrive) or with the O/D OFF switch depressed. Driving with the gearshift lever in D (Overdrive) gives the best fuel economy for normal driving conditions.

For manual control, start in 1 (First) and then shift manually.



## Driving

### Understanding the gearshift positions of the 4-speed automatic transaxle



This vehicle is equipped with an adaptive Transmission Shift Strategy. Adaptive Shift Strategy offers the optimal transmission operation and shift quality. When the vehicle's battery has been disconnected for any type of service or repair, the transmission will need to relearn the normal shift strategy parameters, much like having to reset your radio stations when your vehicle battery has been disconnected. The Adaptive Transmission Strategy allows the transmission to relearn these operating parameters. This learning process could take several transmission upshifts and downshifts; during this learning process, slightly firmer shifts may occur. After this learning process, normal shift feel and shift scheduling will resume.

#### **P (Park)**

This position locks the transaxle and prevents the front wheels from turning.

To put your vehicle in gear:

- Start the engine
- Depress the brake pedal
- Move the gearshift lever into the desired gear



To put your vehicle in P (Park):

- Come to a complete stop
- Move the gearshift lever and securely latch it in P (Park)



Always set the parking brake fully and make sure the gearshift is latched in P (Park). Turn the ignition to the LOCK position and remove the key whenever you leave your vehicle.

### **R (Reverse)**

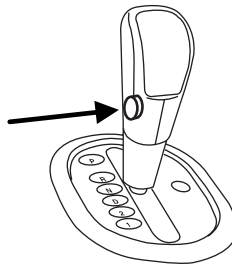
With the gearshift lever in R (Reverse), the vehicle will move backward. Always come to a complete stop before shifting into and out of R (Reverse).

### **N (Neutral)**

With the gearshift lever in N (Neutral), the vehicle can be started and is free to roll. Hold the brake pedal down while in this position.

### **D (Overdrive)**

The normal driving position for the best fuel economy. Transaxle operates in gears one through four. D (Overdrive) can be deactivated by pressing the O/D OFF switch on the side of the gearshift lever. This will illuminate the O/D OFF light and activate Drive.



### **Drive (O/D OFF switch pressed)**

Drive is activated when the O/D OFF switch is pressed.

- This position allows for all forward gears except overdrive.
- O/D OFF light is illuminated.
- Provides engine braking.
- Use when driving conditions cause excessive shifting from O/D to other gears. Examples: city traffic, hilly terrain, heavy loads, trailer towing and when engine braking is required.
- To return to O/D (overdrive mode), press the O/D OFF switch. The O/D OFF light will not be illuminated.
- O/D (Overdrive) is automatically returned each time the key is turned off.

## Driving


### 2 (Second)

This position allows for second gear only.

- Provides engine braking.
- Use to start-up on slippery roads.
- To return to D (Overdrive), move the gearshift lever into the D (Overdrive) position.
- Selecting 2 (Second) at higher speeds will cause the transaxle to downshift to second gear at the appropriate vehicle speed.

### 1 (First)

- Provides maximum engine braking.
- Allows upshifts by moving gearshift lever.
- Will not downshift into 1 (First) at high speeds; allows for 1 (First) when vehicle reaches slower speeds.

 When parking, do not use the gearshift in place of the parking brake. Always set the parking brake fully and make sure that the gearshift is securely latched in P (Park). Turn off the ignition whenever you leave your vehicle. Never leave your vehicle unattended while it is running. If you do not take these precautions, your vehicle may move unexpectedly and injure someone.

### Forced downshifts

- Allowed in D (Overdrive) or Drive.
- Depress the accelerator to the floor.
- Allows transmission to select an appropriate gear.

### If your vehicle gets stuck in mud or snow

If your vehicle gets stuck in mud or snow, it may be rocked out by shifting between forward and reverse gears, stopping between shifts in a steady pattern. Press lightly on the accelerator in each gear.

**Do not rock the vehicle if the engine is not at normal operating temperature or damage to the transmission may occur.**

**Do not rock the vehicle for more than a minute or damage to the transmission and tires may occur, or the engine may overheat.**

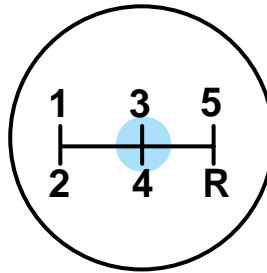
### MANUAL TRANSAXLE OPERATION (IF EQUIPPED)

#### Using the clutch

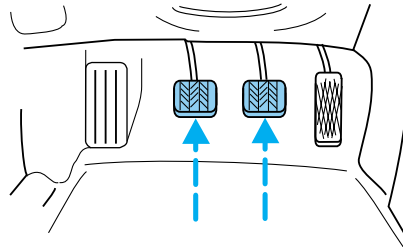
Vehicles equipped with a manual transaxle have a starter interrupt interlock that prevents cranking of the engine unless the clutch pedal is depressed.

When starting a vehicle with a manual transaxle, you must:

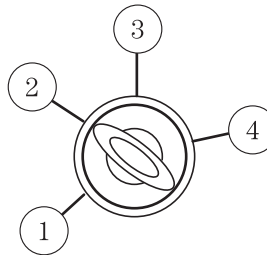
1. Put the gearshift lever in the neutral position.



2. Hold down the brake pedal.
3. Depress the clutch pedal to the floor.



4. Without depressing the accelerator pedal, turn the ignition to position 4 (START), release the ignition as soon as the engine starts.
5. Let the engine idle for a few seconds.
6. Release the brake pedal, then slowly release the clutch pedal while pressing down slowly on the accelerator pedal.



**Do not drive with your foot resting on the clutch pedal and do not use the clutch pedal to hold your vehicle at a standstill while waiting on a hill. These actions will seriously reduce clutch life.**

## Driving

### Recommended shift speeds

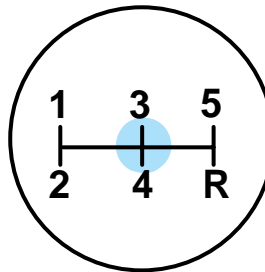
Upshift according to the following charts for best fuel economy:

Upshifts during light to moderate accelerations and cruises (for best fuel economy)	
Shift from:	
1-2	10 mph (16 km/h)
2-3	20 mph (32 km/h)
3-4	32 mph (52 km/h)
4-5	37 mph (60 km/h)

### Reverse

**Make sure that your vehicle is at a complete stop before you shift into R (Reverse). Failure to do so may damage the transaxle.**

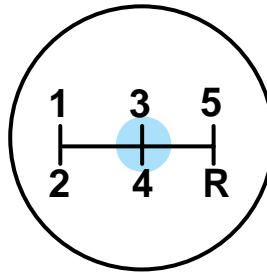
Put the gearshift lever into the neutral position and wait at least three seconds before shifting into R (Reverse).



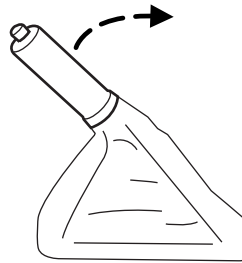
**Note:** You can shift into R (Reverse) only by moving the gearshift lever from left of 3 (Third) and 4 (Fourth) gears before you shift into R (Reverse). This is a special lockout feature which prevents you from shifting into R (Reverse) when you downshift from 5 (Fifth).

**Parking your vehicle**

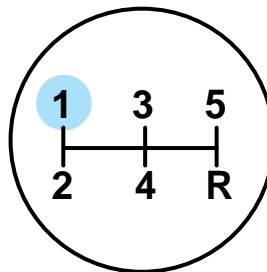
1. Apply the brake and shift into the neutral position.



2. Set the parking brake.

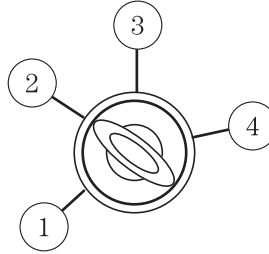


3. Depress the clutch, then shift into 1 (First).



## Driving

4. Turn the ignition to position 1 (LOCK) to shut the engine off and remove the ignition key.



Do not park your vehicle in Neutral, it may move unexpectedly and injure someone. Use 1 (First) gear and set the parking brake fully.

### REVERSE SENSING SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

The Reverse Sensing System (RSS) sounds a tone to warn the driver of obstacles near the rear bumper when R (Reverse) is selected and the vehicle is moving at speeds less than 3 mph (5 km/h). The system is not effective at speeds above 3 mph (5 km/h) and may not detect certain angular or moving objects.



To help avoid personal injury, please read and understand the limitations of the reverse sensing system as contained in this section. Reverse sensing is only an aid for some (generally large and fixed) objects when moving in reverse on a flat surface at “parking speeds”. Inclement weather may also affect the function of the RSS; this may include reduced performance or a false activation.




To help avoid personal injury, always use caution when in reverse and when using the RSS.

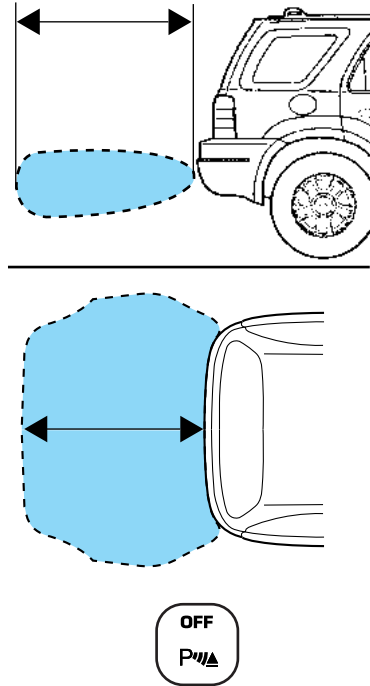


This system is not designed to prevent contact with small or moving objects. The system is designed to provide a warning to assist the driver in detecting large stationary objects to avoid damaging the vehicle. The system may not detect smaller objects, particularly those close to the ground.

## Driving

 Certain add-on devices such as large trailer hitches, bike or surfboard racks and any device that may block the normal detection zone of the RSS system may create false beeps.

The RSS detects obstacles up to 6½ feet (2 meters) from the rear bumper with a decreased coverage area at the outer corners of the bumper, (refer to the figures for approximate zone coverage areas). As you move closer to the obstacle, the rate of the tone increases. When the obstacle is less than 10 inches (25.0 cm) away, the tone will sound continuously. If the RSS detects a stationary or receding object further than 10 inches (25.0 cm) from the side of the vehicle, the tone will sound for only three seconds. Once the system detects an object approaching, the tone will sound again.



The RSS automatically turns on when the gear selector is placed in R (Reverse) and the ignition is on. An RSS control allows the driver to turn the RSS on and off. To turn the RSS off, the ignition must be on. The system will remain off until either the RSS control is pressed again or the ignition is turned off, then on again. An indicator light on the control will illuminate when the system is turned off. If the indicator light illuminates when the RSS is not turned off, it may indicate a failure in the RSS.

**Keep the RSS sensors (located on the rear bumper/fascia) free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt (do not clean the sensors with sharp objects). If the sensors are covered, it will affect the accuracy of the RSS.**

## Driving

**If your vehicle sustains damage to the rear bumper/fascia, leaving it misaligned or bent, the sensing zone may be altered causing inaccurate measurement of obstacles or false alarms.**

### FOUR WHEEL DRIVE (4WD) SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)



For important information regarding safe operation of this type of vehicle, see *Preparing to drive your vehicle* in this chapter.

Your vehicle is equipped with an intelligent 4WD System that continuously monitors vehicle conditions and automatically adjusts the power distribution between the front and rear wheels. It combines transparent all-surface operation with highly capable four-wheel drive.

The 4WD system is always active and requires no driver input. It is capable of handling all road conditions, including street and highway driving as well as off-road and winter driving.

During very extreme off-road events, the 4WD system has a heat protection mode to protect itself from damage. If the system detects an overheat condition, it will enter a locked mode. If the heat in the 4WD system continues to rise in locked mode, it will disable itself. To exit heat protection mode, simply stop the vehicle and allow it to cool for five minutes with the key in the 3 (RUN) position.

#### 4WD system indicator lights

- **Blinks continuously** when 4WD system is disengaged (i.e. two wheel drive) due to heat protection mode.
- **Illuminates** when 4WD system requires service. Please bring your vehicle to your local authorized dealer for service.

4WD

#### 4WD system messages in Message Center (if equipped)

- **SERVICE 4WD:** Displayed when 4WD system requires service. Please bring your vehicle to your local authorized dealer for service.
- **4WD LOCKED TEMPORARILY:** Displayed when 4WD system is locked (i.e. permanent four wheel drive) due to heat protection mode.
- **4WD DISABLED TEMPORARILY:** Displayed when 4WD system is disengaged (i.e. two wheel drive) due to heat protection mode.
- **4WD AUTO RESTORED:** Displayed when normal 4WD system function is restored when heat protection mode is exited.



### **Driving off-road with truck and utility vehicles**

4WD vehicles are specially equipped for driving on sand, snow, mud and rough terrain and have operating characteristics that are somewhat different from conventional vehicles, both on and off the road.

#### ***How your vehicle differs from other vehicles***

Truck and utility vehicles can differ from some other vehicles. Your vehicle may be higher to allow it to travel over rough terrain without getting hung up or damaging underbody components.

The differences that make your vehicle so versatile also make it handle differently than an ordinary passenger car.

Maintain steering wheel control at all times, especially in rough terrain. Since sudden changes in terrain can result in abrupt steering wheel motion, make sure you grip the steering wheel from the outside. Do not grip the spokes.

Drive cautiously to avoid vehicle damage from concealed objects such as rocks and stumps.

You should either know the terrain or examine maps of the area before driving. Map out your route before driving in the area. To maintain steering and braking control of your vehicle, you must have all four wheels on the ground and they must be rolling, not sliding or spinning.

#### ***Basic operating principles***


- Drive slower in strong crosswinds which can affect the normal steering characteristics of your vehicle.
- Be extremely careful when driving on pavement made slippery by loose sand, water, gravel, snow or ice.

#### ***If your vehicle goes off the edge of the pavement***

- If your vehicle goes off the edge of the pavement, slow down, but avoid severe brake application, ease the vehicle back onto the pavement only after reducing your speed. Do not turn the steering wheel too sharply while returning to the road surface.
- It may be safer to stay on the apron or shoulder of the road and slow down gradually before returning to the pavement. You may lose control if you do not slow down or if you turn the steering wheel too sharply or abruptly.

## Driving

- It often may be less risky to strike small objects, such as highway reflectors, with minor damage to your vehicle rather than attempt a sudden return to the pavement which could cause the vehicle to slide sideways out of control or roll over. Remember, your safety and the safety of others should be your primary concern.


 Vehicles with a higher center of gravity such as utility and four-wheel drive vehicles handle differently than vehicles with a lower center of gravity. Utility and four-wheel drive vehicles are **not** designed for cornering at speeds as high as passenger cars any more than low-slung sports cars are designed to perform satisfactorily under off-road conditions. Avoid sharp turns, excessive speed and abrupt maneuvers in these vehicles. Failure to drive cautiously could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.


### ***If your vehicle gets stuck***


If your vehicle gets stuck in mud or snow it may be rocked out by shifting between forward and reverse gears, stopping between shifts, in a steady pattern. Press lightly on the accelerator in each gear.

**Do not rock the vehicle if the engine is not at normal operating temperature or damage to the transmission may occur.**

**Do not rock the vehicle for more than a few minutes or damage to the transmission and tires may occur or the engine may overheat.**

 Always set the parking brake fully and make sure the gearshift is latched in P (Park). Turn the ignition to the LOCK position and remove the key whenever you leave your vehicle.

 If the parking brake is fully released, but the brake warning lamp remains illuminated, the brakes may not be working properly. See your authorized dealer.

 Do not spin the wheels at over 35 mph (56 km/h). The tires may fail and injure a passenger or bystander.

### **Emergency maneuvers**

- In an unavoidable emergency situation where a sudden sharp turn must be made, remember to avoid “over-driving” your vehicle, i.e., turn the steering wheel only as rapidly and as far as required to avoid the emergency. Excessive steering will result in less vehicle control, not more. Additionally, smooth variations of the accelerator and/or brake pedal pressure should be utilized if changes in vehicle speed are called for. Avoid abrupt steering, acceleration or braking which could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover and/or personal injury. Use all available road surface to return the vehicle to a safe direction of travel.
- In the event of an emergency stop, avoid skidding the tires and do not attempt any sharp steering wheel movements.



Vehicles with a higher center of gravity such as utility and four-wheel drive vehicles handle differently than vehicles with a lower center of gravity. Utility and four-wheel drive vehicles are **not** designed for cornering at speeds as high as passenger cars any more than low-slung sports cars are designed to perform satisfactorily under off-road conditions. Avoid sharp turns, excessive speed and abrupt maneuvers in these vehicles. Failure to drive cautiously could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

- If the vehicle goes from one type of surface to another (i.e., from concrete to gravel) there will be a change in the way the vehicle responds to a maneuver (steering, acceleration or braking). Again, avoid these abrupt inputs.

### **Sand**

When driving over sand, try to keep all four wheels on the most solid area of the trail. Avoid reducing the tire pressures but shift to a lower gear and drive steadily through the terrain. Apply the accelerator slowly and avoid spinning the wheels.

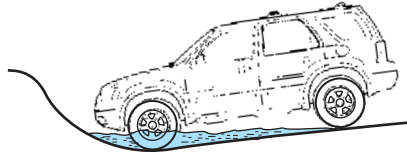
Avoid excessive speed because vehicle momentum can work against you and cause the vehicle to become stuck to the point that assistance may be required from another vehicle. Remember, you may be able to back out the way you came if you proceed with caution.

## Driving

### **Mud and water**

If you must drive through high water, drive slowly. Traction or brake capability may be limited.

When driving through water, determine the depth; avoid water higher than the bottom of the hubs (if possible) and proceed slowly. If the ignition system gets wet, the vehicle may stall.



Once through water, always try the brakes. Wet brakes do not stop the vehicle as effectively as dry brakes. Drying can be improved by moving your vehicle slowly while applying light pressure on the brake pedal.

Be cautious of sudden changes in vehicle speed or direction when you are driving in mud. Even 4WD vehicles can lose traction in slick mud. As when you are driving over sand, apply the accelerator slowly and avoid spinning your wheels. If the vehicle does slide, steer in the direction of the slide until you regain control of the vehicle.

If the transmission, transfer case or front axle are submerged in water, their fluids should be checked and changed, if necessary.

### **Driving through deep water may damage the transmission.**

If the front or rear axle is submerged in water, the axle lubricant should be replaced.

After driving through mud, clean off residue stuck to rotating driveshafts and tires. Excess mud stuck on tires and rotating driveshafts causes an imbalance that could damage drive components.

“Tread Lightly” is an educational program designed to increase public awareness of land-use regulations and responsibilities in our nation's wilderness areas. Ford Motor

Company joins the U.S. Forest Service and the Bureau of Land Management in encouraging you to help preserve our national forest and other public and private lands by “treading lightly.”

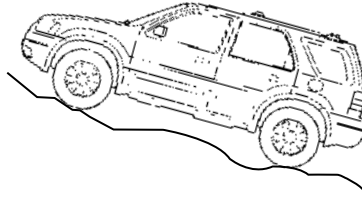


### ***Driving on hilly or sloping terrain***

Although natural obstacles may make it necessary to travel diagonally up or down a hill or steep incline, you should always try to drive straight up or straight down. **Avoid driving crosswise or turning on steep slopes or hills.** A danger lies in losing traction, slipping sideways and possibly rolling over. Whenever driving on a hill, determine beforehand the route you will use. Do not drive over the crest of a hill without seeing what conditions are on the other side. Do not drive in reverse over a hill without the aid of an observer.

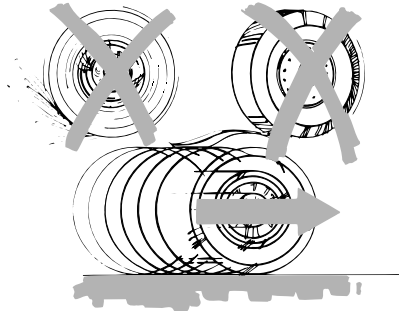
When climbing a steep slope or hill, start in a lower gear rather than downshifting to a lower gear from a higher gear once the ascent has started. This reduces strain on the engine and the possibility of stalling.

If you do stall out, Do not try to turnaround because you might roll over. It is better to back down to a safe location.



Apply just enough power to the wheels to climb the hill. Too much power will cause the tires to slip, spin or lose traction, resulting in loss of vehicle control.

Descend a hill in the same gear you would use to climb up the hill to avoid excessive brake application and brake overheating. Do not descend in neutral; instead, disengage overdrive or manually shift to a lower gear. When descending a steep hill, avoid sudden hard braking as you could lose control. When you brake hard, the front wheels can't turn and if they aren't turning, you won't be able to steer. The front wheels have to be turning in order to steer the vehicle. Rapid pumping of the brake pedal will help you slow the vehicle and still maintain steering control.



If your vehicle has anti-lock brakes, apply the brakes steadily. Do not "pump" the brakes.

## Driving

### ***Driving on snow and ice***

4WD vehicles have advantages over 2WD vehicles in snow and ice but can skid like any other vehicle.

Should you start to slide while driving on snowy or icy roads, turn the steering wheel in the direction of the slide until you regain control.

Avoid sudden applications of power and quick changes of direction on snow and ice. Apply the accelerator slowly and steadily when starting from a full stop.

Avoid sudden braking as well. Although a 4WD vehicle may accelerate better than a two-wheel drive vehicle in snow and ice, it won't stop any faster, because as in other vehicles, braking occurs at all four wheels. Do not become overconfident as to road conditions.

Make sure you allow sufficient distance between you and other vehicles for stopping. Drive slower than usual and consider using one of the lower gears. In emergency stopping situations, avoid locking of the wheels. Use a "squeeze" technique, push on the brake pedal with a steadily increasing force which allows the wheels to brake yet continue to roll so that you may steer in the direction you want to travel. If you lock the wheels, release the brake pedal and repeat the squeeze technique. Since your vehicle is equipped with a Four Wheel Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS), apply the brake steadily. Do not "pump" the brakes. Refer to the *Brakes* section of this chapter for additional information on the operation of the anti-lock brake system.

4WD vehicles should be driven with traction devices as referred to in *Using snow tires and traction devices* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter.

### ***Maintenance and Modifications***

The suspension and steering systems on your vehicle have been designed and tested to provide predictable performance whether loaded or empty and durable load carrying capability. For this reason, Ford Motor Company strongly recommends that you do not make modifications such as adding or removing parts (such as lift kits or stabilizer bars) or by using replacement parts not equivalent to the original factory equipment.

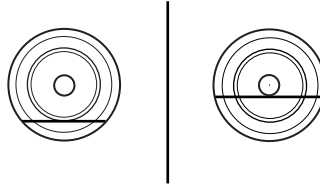
Any modifications to a vehicle that raise the center of gravity can make it more likely the vehicle will roll over as a result of a loss of control. Ford Motor Company recommends that caution be used with any vehicle equipped with a high load or device (such as ladder racks or pickup box cover).

## Driving

Failure to maintain your vehicle properly may void the warranty, increase your repair cost, reduce vehicle performance and operational capabilities and adversely affect driver and passenger safety. Frequent inspection of vehicle chassis components is recommended if the vehicle is subjected to heavy off-road usage.

### DRIVING THROUGH WATER

If driving through deep or standing water is unavoidable, proceed very slowly especially when the depth is not known. Never drive through water that is higher than the bottom of the wheel rims (for cars) or the bottom of the hubs (for trucks).



When driving through water, traction or brake capability may be limited. Also, water may enter your engine's air intake and severely damage your engine or your vehicle may stall. **Driving through deep water where the transmission vent tube is submerged may allow water into the transmission and cause internal transmission damage.**

**Once through the water, always dry the brakes by moving your vehicle slowly while applying light pressure on the brake pedal.**

Wet brakes do not stop the vehicle as quickly as dry brakes.

## Roadside Emergencies

### ROADSIDE ASSISTANCE

#### Getting roadside assistance

To fully assist you should you have a vehicle concern, Ford Motor Company offers a complimentary roadside assistance program. This program is separate from the New Vehicle Limited Warranty. The service is available:

- 24-hours, seven days a week
- for the New Vehicle Limited Warranty period of three years or 36,000 miles (60,000 km), whichever occurs first on Ford and Mercury vehicles, and four years or 50,000 miles (80,000 km) on Lincoln vehicles.

Roadside assistance will cover:

- a flat tire change with a good spare (except Ford GT which has a tire inflation kit)
- battery jump start
- lock-out assistance (key replacement cost is the customer's responsibility)
- fuel delivery – Independent Service Contractors, if not prohibited by state, local or municipal law shall deliver up to 2.0 gallons (7.5L) of gasoline or 5 gallons (18.9L) of diesel fuel to a disabled vehicle.
- winch out – available within 100 feet (30.5 meters) of a paved or county maintained road, no recoveries.
- towing – Ford/Mercury/Lincoln eligible vehicle towed to an authorized dealer within 35 miles (56.3 km) of the disablement location or to the nearest authorized dealer. If a member requests to be towed to an authorized dealer more than 35 miles (56.3 km) from the disablement location, the member shall be responsible for any mileage costs in excess of 35 miles (56.3 km).

Trailers shall be covered up to \$100 if the disabled eligible vehicle requires service at the nearest authorized dealer. If the trailer is disabled, but the towing vehicle is operational, the trailer does not qualify for any roadside services.

#### Canadian customers refer to your Owner Information Guide for information on:

- coverage period
- exact fuel amounts
- towing of your disabled vehicle
- emergency travel expense reimbursement
- travel planning benefits

200

*2006 Escape (204)*  
*Owners Guide (post-2002-fmt)*  
*USA (fus)*



## Roadside Emergencies

### Using roadside assistance

Complete the roadside assistance identification card and place it in your wallet for quick reference. In the United States, this card is found in the Owner Guide portfolio in the glove compartment. In Canada, the card is found in the *Owner Information Guide* in the glove compartment.

U.S. Ford or Mercury vehicle customers who require roadside assistance, call 1-800-241-3673; Lincoln vehicle customers call 1-800-521-4140.

Canadian customers who require roadside assistance, call 1-800-665-2006.

If you need to arrange roadside assistance for yourself, Ford Motor Company will reimburse a reasonable amount. To obtain reimbursement information, U.S. Ford or Mercury vehicles customers call 1-800-241-3673; Lincoln vehicle customers call 1-800-521-4140.

Canadian customers who need to obtain reimbursement information, call 1-800-665-2006.

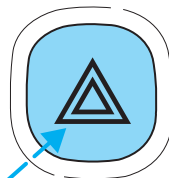
### Roadside coverage beyond basic warranty

In the United States, you may purchase additional roadside assistance coverage beyond this period through the Ford Auto Club by contacting your authorized dealer.

Similarly in Canada, for uninterrupted Roadside Assistance coverage, you may purchase extended coverage prior to your Basic Warranty's Roadside Assistance expiring. For more information and enrollment, contact 1-877-294-2582 or visit our website at [www.ford.ca](http://www.ford.ca).

### HAZARD FLASHER CONTROL

The hazard flasher is located on the instrument panel by the radio. The hazard flashers will operate when the ignition is in any position or if the key is not in the ignition.



Push in the flasher control and all front and rear direction signals will flash. Press the flasher control again to turn them off. Use it when your vehicle is disabled and is creating a safety hazard for other motorists.

**Note:** With extended use, the flasher may run down your battery.

## Roadside Emergencies

### FUEL PUMP SHUT-OFF SWITCH

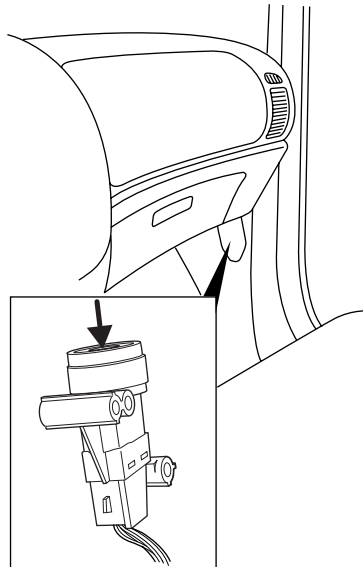
This device stops the electric fuel pump from sending fuel to the engine when your vehicle has had a substantial jolt.

After an accident, if the engine cranks but does not start, this switch may have been activated.

This switch is located in the front passenger's footwell, behind a flip-up cover, by the kick panel access cover.

To reset the switch:

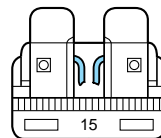
1. Turn the ignition OFF.
2. Check the fuel system for leaks.
3. If no leaks are apparent, reset the switch by pushing in on the reset button.
4. Turn the ignition ON.
5. Wait a few seconds and return the key to OFF.
6. Make another check for leaks.



### FUSES AND RELAYS

#### Fuses

If electrical components in the vehicle are not working, a fuse may have blown. Blown fuses are identified by a broken wire within the fuse. Check the appropriate fuses before replacing any electrical components.



**Note:** Always replace a fuse with one that has the specified amperage rating. Using a fuse with a higher amperage rating can cause severe wire damage and could start a fire.

202

2006 Escape (204)  
Owners Guide (post-2002-fmt)  
USA (fus)

## Roadside Emergencies

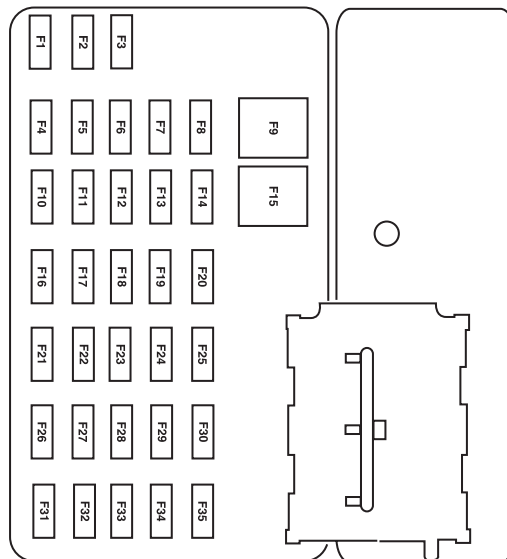
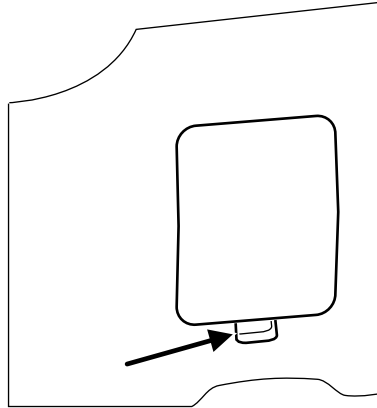
### Standard fuse amperage rating and color

COLOR					
Fuse rating	Mini fuses	Standard fuses	Maxi fuses	Cartridge maxi fuses	Fuse link cartridge
2A	Grey	Grey	—	—	—
3A	Violet	Violet	—	—	—
4A	Pink	Pink	—	—	—
5A	Tan	Tan	—	—	—
7.5A	Brown	Brown	—	—	—
10A	Red	Red	—	—	—
15A	Blue	Blue	—	—	—
20A	Yellow	Yellow	Yellow	Blue	Blue
25A	Natural	Natural	—	—	—
30A	Green	Green	Green	Pink	Pink
40A	—	—	Orange	Green	Green
50A	—	—	Red	Red	Red
60A	—	—	Blue	—	Yellow
70A	—	—	Tan	—	Brown
80A	—	—	Natural	—	Black

## Roadside Emergencies

### Passenger compartment fuse panel

The fuse panel is located on the right-hand side of the center console, by the instrument panel. Remove the panel cover to access the fuses.



## Roadside Emergencies

The fuses are coded as follows:

Fuse/Relay Location	Fuse Amp Rating	Passenger Compartment Fuse Panel Description
1	15A*	Trailer tow park lamps
2	—	Not used
3	15A*	Front and rear park lamps
4	10A*	Ignition switch
5	2A*	Powertrain Control Module (PCM relay), Fuel pump relay, Main fan relay, High/Low speed fan relay 2, PATS module
6	15A*	Center High-Mounted Stop Lamp (CHMSL), Stop lamps, PCM, Anti-lock Brake System (ABS), Speed control, Brake On-Off switch
7	10A*	Instrument cluster, Diagnostic connector, Power mirror switch, Radio
8	—	Not used
9	30A**	Power door locks, Power seats
10	15A*	Heated mirrors
11	15A*	Sunroof, Electrochromatic mirror
12	5A*	Radio
13	—	Not used
14	—	Not used
15	30A**	Power windows
16	15A*	Subwoofer
17	15A*	Low beams
18	10A*	4WD
19	—	Not used
20	15A*	Horn
21	10A*	Rear wiper motor, Rear wiper washer
22	10A*	Instrument cluster
23	—	Not used

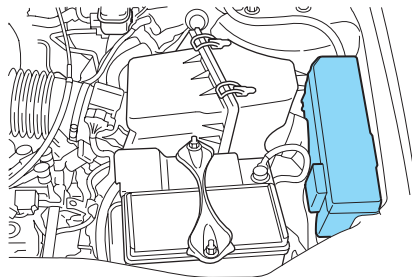
## Roadside Emergencies

Fuse/Relay Location	Fuse Amp Rating	Passenger Compartment Fuse Panel Description
24	20A*	Cigar lighter
25	20A*	Front wiper motor, Front wiper washer
26	5A*	Climate control system mode switch
27	5A*	Canister vent, Speed control cancel switch
28	10A*	Instrument cluster
29	10A*	Reverse park aid
30	—	Not used
31	—	Not used
32	10A*	Brake-Transmission shift lock
33	15A*	Air bag module, Passenger Air bag Deactivation (PAD) indicator lamp, Occupant Classification Sensor (OCS)
34	5A*	ABS module, Evac and Fill, Speed control
35	5A*	Heated seats module, 4WD

\* Mini fuse \*\* Cartridge fuse

### Power distribution box

The power distribution box is located in the engine compartment. The power distribution box contains high-current fuses that protect your vehicle's main electrical systems from overloads.



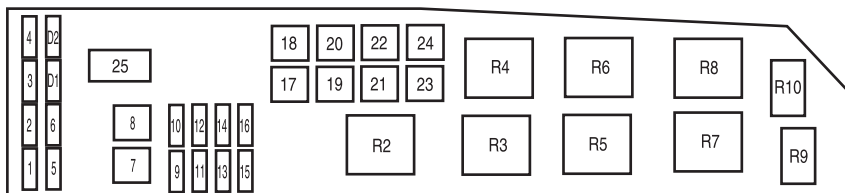
Always disconnect the battery before servicing high current fuses.

## Roadside Emergencies



To reduce risk of electrical shock, always replace the cover to the Power Distribution Box before reconnecting the battery or refilling fluid reservoirs.

If the battery has been disconnected and reconnected, refer to the *Battery* section of the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter.



The high-current fuses are coded as follows.

Fuse/Relay Location	Fuse Amp Rating	Power Distribution Box Description
1	—	Not used
2	25A*	Headlamp power
3	25A*	High beams, Turn signals, Interior lamps, Headlamp power
4	5A*	Keep Alive Power (KA PWR)
5	15A*	Heated Exhaust Gas Oxygen (HEGO) sensors
6	20A*	Fuel pump
7	40A**	RUN/ACC relay - Electrochromatic mirror, Cigar lighter, Front and rear wipers
8	30A**	Powertrain Control Module (PCM), Injectors and coil
9	15A*	Alternator
10	30A*	Heated seats
11	10A*	PCM
12	20A*	Power point

## Roadside Emergencies

Fuse/Relay Location	Fuse Amp Rating	Power Distribution Box Description
13	20A*	Fog lamps
14	15A*	A/C clutch, A/C relay
15	30A*	Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) solenoid
16	25A*	I/P fuse panel (RUN/START)
17	50A**	Ignition (main)
18	40A**	Blower motor
19	40A**	Accessory delay relay - Subwoofer and 4WD, Low beam
20	60A**	ABS
21	40A**	Horn, CHMSL, Cluster, Power locks and power seats
22	40A** (I4)	Cooling fan
	50A** (V6)	
23	40A**	Rear defroster, Park lamps relay
24	40A** (I4)	High/Low speed fan
	50A** (V6)	
25	—	Shunt
R2	—	PCM relay
R3	—	Fuel pump relay
R4	—	Cooling fan relay
R5	—	High/Low speed fan relay 1
R6	—	Blower motor relay
R7	—	Starter relay
R8	—	High/Low speed fan relay 2
R9	—	Fog lamps relay
R10	—	A/C relay
D1	—	Not used
D2	—	A/C diode
* Mini fuse ** Cartridge fuse		



## Roadside Emergencies

### CHANGING A FLAT TIRE

If you get a flat tire while driving:

- do not brake heavily.
- gradually decrease the vehicle's speed.
- hold the steering wheel firmly.
- slowly move to a safe place on the side of the road.

Your vehicle may be equipped with a conventional spare tire that is different in one or more of the following: type, brand, size, speed rating and tread design. If this is the case, this dissimilar spare tire is still rated for your vehicle loads (GAWR and GVWR). Your vehicle may be equipped with a spare wheel that may not match the road wheels and is not equipped with a Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS) sensor.



The use of tire sealants may damage your tires. The use of tire sealants may also damage your Tire Pressure Monitoring System and should not be used.



Refer to *Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)* in the *Tire, Wheels and Loading* chapter for important information. If the tire pressure monitor sensor becomes damaged, it will no longer function.

### Dissimilar spare tire/wheel information



Failure to follow these guidelines could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, injury or death.

If you have a dissimilar spare tire/wheel, then it is intended for temporary use only. This means that if you need to use it, you should replace it as soon as possible with a road tire/wheel that is the same size and type as the road tires and wheels that were originally provided by Ford. If the dissimilar spare tire or wheel is damaged, it should be replaced rather than repaired.

## Roadside Emergencies

A dissimilar spare tire/wheel is defined as a spare tire and/or wheel that is different in brand, size or appearance from the road tires and wheels and can be one of three types:

1. **T-type mini-spare:** This spare tire begins with the letter “T” for tire size and may have “Temporary Use Only” molded in the sidewall
2. **Full-size dissimilar spare with label on wheel:** This spare tire has a label on the wheel that states: “THIS TIRE AND WHEEL FOR TEMPORARY USE ONLY”

When driving with one of the dissimilar spare tires listed above, **do not:**

- Exceed 50 mph (80 km/h)
- Load the vehicle beyond maximum vehicle load rating listed on the Safety Compliance Label
- Tow a trailer
- Use snow chains on the end of the vehicle with the dissimilar spare tire
- Use more than one dissimilar spare tire at a time
- Use commercial car washing equipment
- Try to repair the dissimilar spare tire

Use of one of the dissimilar spare tires listed above at any one wheel location can lead to impairment of the following:

- Handling, stability and braking performance
- Comfort and noise
- Ground clearance and parking at curbs
- Winter weather driving capability
- Wet weather driving capability

For vehicles equipped with 4WD, it is not recommended that the vehicle be operated in 4WD modes with a temporary emergency spare tire. If 4WD operation is necessary, do not operate above speeds of 10 mph (16 km/h) or for distances above 50 miles (80 km).

### 3. Full-size dissimilar spare without label on wheel

When driving with the full-size dissimilar spare tire/wheel, **do not:**

- Exceed 70 mph (113 km/h)
- Use more than one dissimilar spare tire/wheel at a time
- Use commercial car washing equipment
- Use snow chains on the end of the vehicle with the dissimilar spare tire/wheel

## Roadside Emergencies

The usage of a full-size dissimilar spare tire/wheel can lead to impairment of the following:

- Handling, stability and braking performance
- Comfort and noise
- Ground clearance and parking at curbs
- Winter weather driving capability
- Wet weather driving capability
- All-Wheel driving capability (if applicable)
- Load leveling adjustment (if applicable)

When driving with the full-size dissimilar spare tire/wheel additional caution should be given to:

- Towing a trailer
- Driving vehicles equipped with a camper body
- Driving vehicles with a load on the cargo rack

Drive cautiously when using a full-size dissimilar spare tire/wheel and seek service as soon as possible.

### Full-size Matching Spare Tire/Wheel Information


This spare tire/wheel will match the road tire/wheel. When driving with the full size matching spare tire/wheel, do not exceed 70 mph (113 km/h). It is intended for temporary use only. This means if you need to use it, you should replace it as soon as possible.


### Tire change procedure


**Note:** The tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) indicator light will illuminate when the spare is in use. To restore the full functionality of the TPMS system, all road wheels equipped with the tire pressure monitoring sensors must be mounted on the vehicle.

Have a flat tire serviced by an authorized dealer in order to prevent damage to the TPMS sensor, refer to *Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)* in the *Tires, Wheels, and Loading* chapter. Replace the spare tire with a road tire as soon as possible. During repairing or replacing of the flat tire, have the authorized dealer inspect the TPMS sensor for damage.

## Roadside Emergencies

 When one of the front wheels is off the ground, the transmission alone will not prevent the vehicle from moving or slipping off the jack, even if the vehicle is in P (Park) (automatic transaxle) or R (Reverse) (manual transaxle).

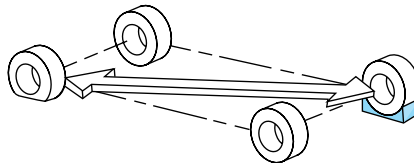
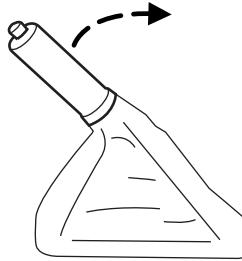
 To help prevent the vehicle from moving when you change a tire, be sure the parking brake is set, then block (in both directions) the wheel that is diagonally opposite (other side and end of the vehicle) to the tire being changed.

 If the vehicle slips off the jack, you or someone else could be seriously injured.

1. Park on a level surface, activate hazard flashers and place gearshift lever in P (Park) (automatic transmission) or R (Reverse) (manual transmission).

2. Set the parking brake and turn engine off.

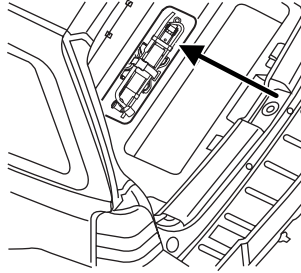
3. Block the diagonally opposite wheel.



## Roadside Emergencies

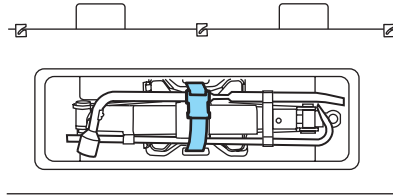
### **Removing the jack and tools**

**Non-cargo management system (if equipped):** The jack and tools are located under the carpeted hardboard.



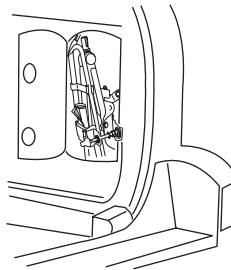
Pull back the carpet away from the lift gate, and remove the hardboard cover.

Unbuckle the strap and remove the jack and tools by pulling the right side up first. Remove the tools from the jack in order to remove the spare tire from under the vehicle.



**Note:** For some non-cargo management system vehicles, the jack and tools are located in the right rear of the cargo area behind an access panel.

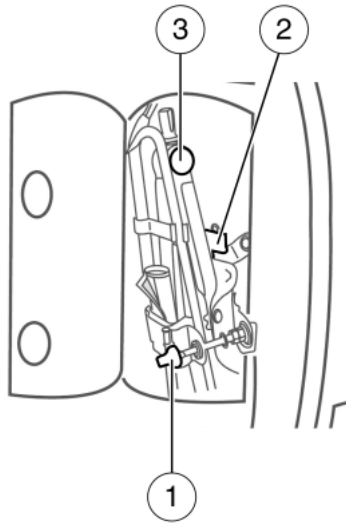
**Cargo management system (if equipped):** The jack and tools are located in the right rear of the cargo area behind an access panel.



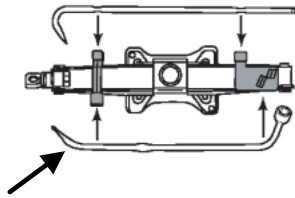
## Roadside Emergencies

To remove jack from vehicle:

1. Release the thumbscrew on the bracket.
2. Release the retention clip on the upper part of the jack bracket.
3. Dislodge the jack from the bracket and carefully guide jack down and out through trim opening, upper end out first.

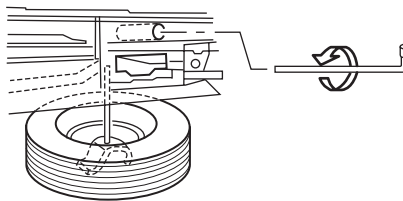


Remove the lug wrench from the jack in order to remove the spare tire from under the vehicle.



### **Removing the spare tire or spare tire and tether (if equipped)**

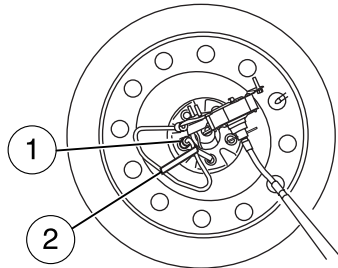
1. Insert the lug wrench through the access hole in the rear bumper.
2. Turn the handle counterclockwise and lower the spare tire until it can be slid rearward and the cable is slack.
3. Slide the retainer through the center of the wheel.



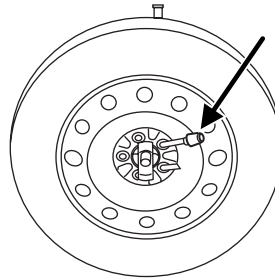
## Roadside Emergencies

**If equipped with a tether, perform the following additional steps:**

4. Lift the spare tire on end to access tether attachment (1).

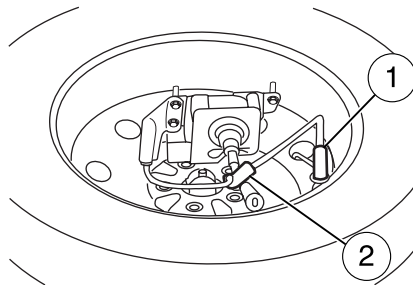


5. Use the lug wrench to remove the lug nut from the spare tire tether.



6. If not replacing the spare or flat tire to the underbody storage area, raise winch up into the installed position.

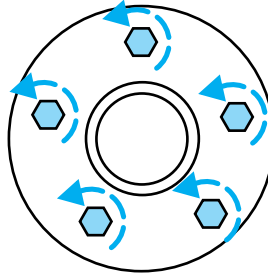
7. Use the attached Velcro strap (2) to tie the tether end to the winch actuator shaft (if equipped).




## Roadside Emergencies

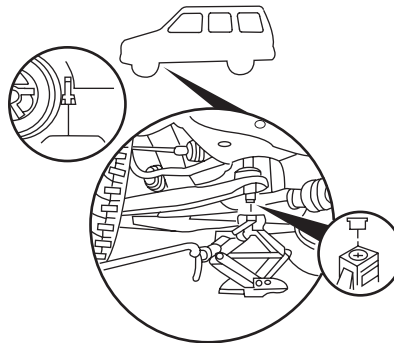
### ***Changing the flat tire***

8. Loosen each wheel lug nut one-half turn counterclockwise but do not remove them until the wheel is raised off the ground.

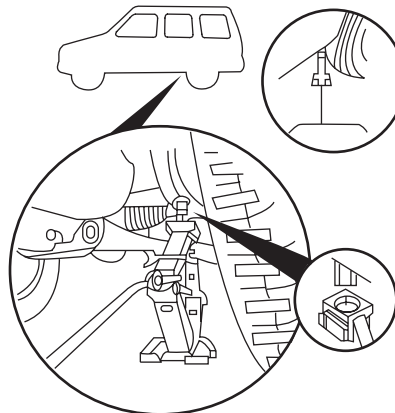


 Before placing the jack under the vehicle, NOTE the jack locations:

- **Front**



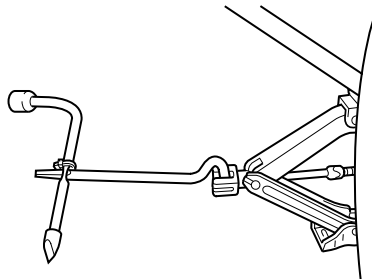
- **Rear**






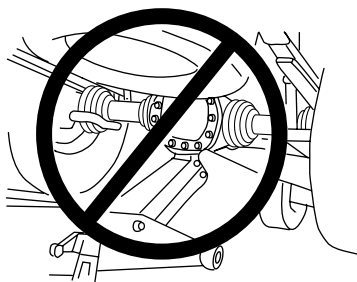
## Roadside Emergencies

9. Lower the jack from its stored height to fit under the jacking notches. Position the jack according to the following guides and turn the jack handle clockwise until the tire is a maximum of 1 inch (25 mm) off the ground.



**Never use the differentials as a jacking point.**

 To lessen the risk of personal injury, do not put any part of your body under the vehicle while changing a tire. Do not start the engine when your vehicle is on the jack. The jack is only meant for changing the tire.

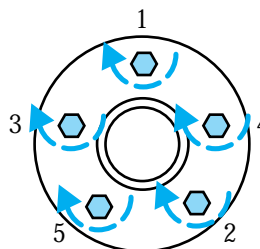


10. Remove the lug nuts with the lug nut wrench.

11. Replace the flat tire with the spare tire, making sure the valve stem is facing outward. Reinstall lug nuts until the wheel is snug against the hub. Do not fully tighten the lug nuts until the wheel has been lowered.

12. Lower the wheel by turning the jack handle counterclockwise.

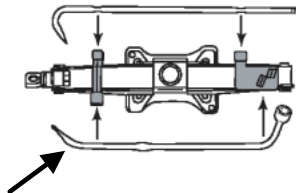
13. Remove the jack and fully tighten the lug nuts in the order shown. Refer to *Wheel lug nut torque specifications* later in this chapter for the proper lug nut torque specification.



## Roadside Emergencies

### Cargo management system (if equipped):

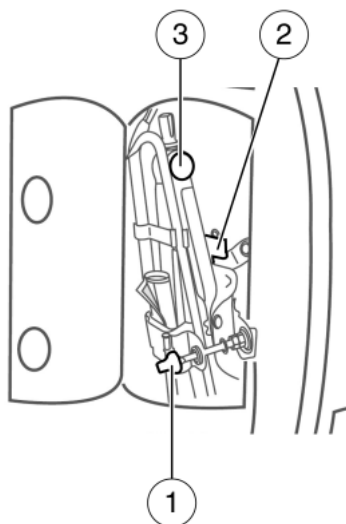
Reclip the tools onto the jack.



Reinstall the jack and tools in the cargo area. To replace the jack in the vehicle,

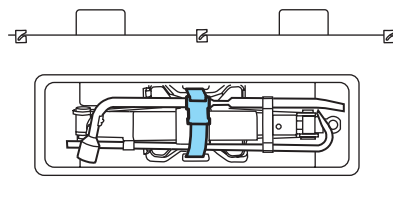
- guide the jack bottom first in the trim opening and position in the bracket (3),
- secure the retention clip on the upper part of the jack (2), and
- close the thumbscrew (1).

Make sure the jack is fastened so it does not rattle when you drive.



### Non-cargo management system (if equipped):

- Reclip the tools onto the jack making sure that the tools are fully contained by the clips as shown.
- Reinstall the jack in the pocket with the left side first, then snap the right side down.



## Roadside Emergencies

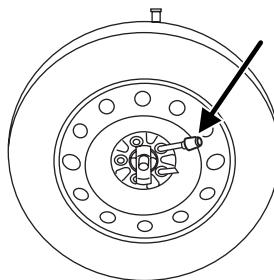
- Ensure that the hold-strap contains the jack and tools before snapping the buckle.
- Ensure that the jack and tools are oriented as illustrated.

### Stowing the flat/spare tire

**Note:** Failure to follow spare tire stowage instructions may result in failure of cable or loss of spare tire.

**If you are stowing a tire that requires reattaching it to the vehicle with a tether, perform these steps first, then proceed with the steps following.**

1. Place tire on end with valve stem facing rearward, away from vehicle.
2. Place tether into bolt holes in wheel and attach lug nut using lug wrench.



3. Lay the tire on the ground with the valve stem facing down. If your vehicle is equipped with aluminum wheels, remove the wheel ornament.
4. Slide the wheel partially under the vehicle and install the retainer through the center of the wheel.
5. Turn the jack handle clockwise until the tire is raised to its original position underneath the vehicle. The effort to turn the jack handle increases significantly as the tire contacts the frame. The spare tire carrier will ratchet when the tire is in the fully stowed position. The spare tire carrier has a built-in ratchet feature that will not allow you to overtighten. If the spare tire carrier ratchets with very little effort, take the vehicle to your authorized dealer for assistance at your earliest convenience. **If your vehicle is equipped with a trailer hitch, guide the tire with one hand; keep the rear of the tire tilted down until the tire clears the bumper.**
6. Check that the tire lies flat against the frame assembly. Push against the tire to make sure it is tightly seated under the vehicle. Loosen and retighten, if necessary. Failure to properly stow the spare tire may result in failure of the winch cable and loss of the spare tire. **(Make sure that the tire does not contact the bumper.)**


## Roadside Emergencies

7. Repeat this tightness check procedure when servicing the spare tire pressure (every six months, per *scheduled maintenance information*), or at any time that the spare tire is disturbed through service of other components.


### WHEEL LUG NUT TORQUE SPECIFICATIONS


Retighten the lug nuts to the specified torque at 500 miles (800 km) after any wheel disturbance (tire rotation, changing a flat tire, wheel removal, etc.).

Bolt size	Wheel lug nut torque*	
	lb.ft.	N•m
M12 x 1.5	100	135
* Torque specifications are for nut and bolt threads free of dirt and rust. Use only Ford recommended replacement fasteners.		

 When a wheel is installed, always remove any corrosion, dirt or foreign materials present on the mounting surfaces of the wheel or the surface of the wheel hub, brake drum or brake disc that contacts the wheel. Ensure that any fasteners that attach the rotor to the hub are secured so they do not interfere with the mounting surfaces of the wheel. Installing wheels without correct metal-to-metal contact at the wheel mounting surfaces can cause the wheel nuts to loosen and the wheel to come off while the vehicle is in motion, resulting in loss of control.

### JUMP STARTING

 The gases around the battery can explode if exposed to flames, sparks, or lit cigarettes. An explosion could result in injury or vehicle damage.

 Batteries contain sulfuric acid which can burn skin, eyes and clothing, if contacted.

**Do not attempt to push-start your vehicle. Automatic transmissions do not have push-start capability; doing so may damage the catalytic converter.**

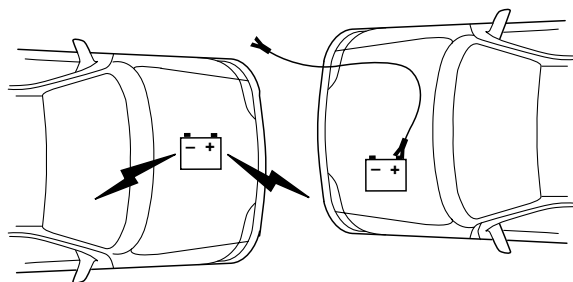
## Roadside Emergencies

### Preparing your vehicle

When the battery is disconnected or a new battery is installed, the transmission must relearn its shift strategy. As a result, the transmission may have firm and/or soft shifts. This operation is considered normal and will not affect function or durability of the transmission. Over time, the adaptive learning process will fully update transmission operation.

1. **Use only a 12-volt supply to start your vehicle.**
2. Do not disconnect the battery of the disabled vehicle as this could damage the vehicle's electrical system.
3. Park the booster vehicle close to the hood of the disabled vehicle making sure the two vehicles **do not** touch. Set the parking brake on both vehicles and stay clear of the engine cooling fan and other moving parts.
4. Check all battery terminals and remove any excessive corrosion before you attach the battery cables. Ensure that vent caps are tight and level.
5. Turn the heater fan on in both vehicles to protect any electrical surges. Turn all other accessories off.

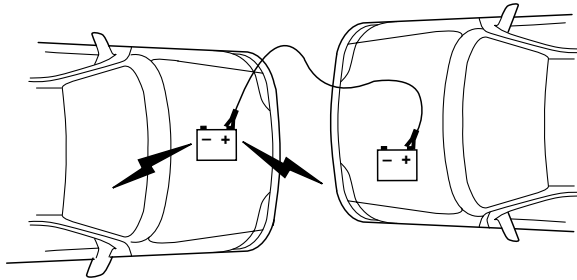
### Connecting the jumper cables



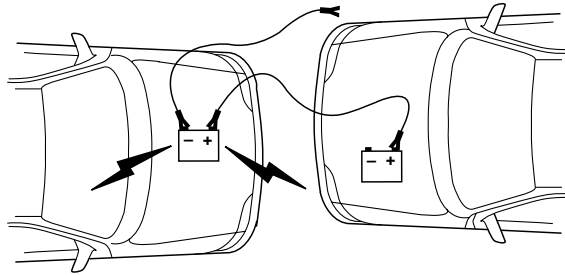
1. Connect the positive (+) jumper cable to the positive (+) terminal of the discharged battery.

**Note:** In the illustrations, *lightning bolts* are used to designate the assisting (boosting) battery.

## Roadside Emergencies

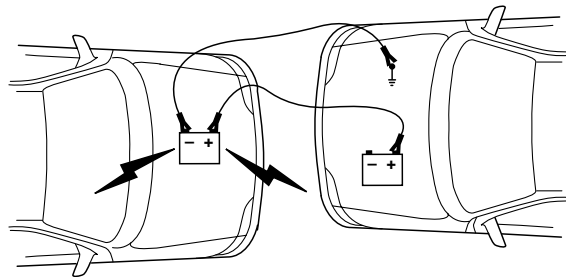


2. Connect the other end of the positive (+) cable to the positive (+) terminal of the assisting battery.




3. Connect the negative (-) cable to the negative (-) terminal of the assisting battery.

## Roadside Emergencies



4. Make the final connection of the negative (-) cable to an exposed metal part of the stalled vehicle's engine, away from the battery and the carburetor/fuel injection system. **Do not** use fuel lines, engine rocker covers or the intake manifold as *grounding* points.

 Do not connect the end of the second cable to the negative (-) terminal of the battery to be jumped. A spark may cause an explosion of the gases that surround the battery.

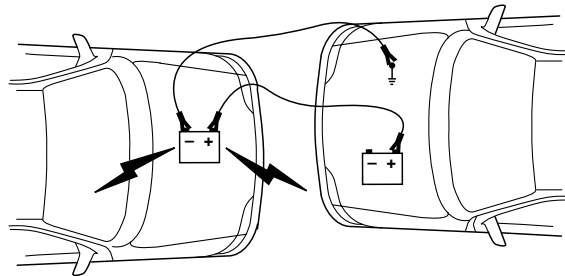
5. Ensure that the cables are clear of fan blades, belts, moving parts of both engines, or any fuel delivery system parts.

### **Jump starting**

1. Start the engine of the booster vehicle and run the engine at moderately increased speed.
2. Start the engine of the disabled vehicle.
3. Once the disabled vehicle has been started, run both engines for an additional three minutes before disconnecting the jumper cables.

## Roadside Emergencies

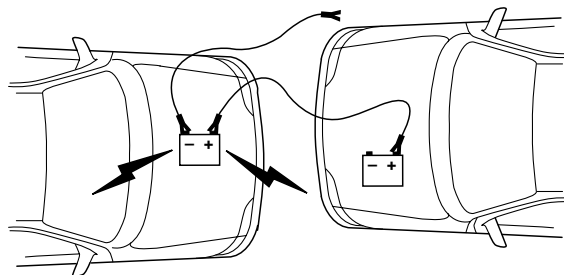
### Removing the jumper cables



**Remove the jumper cables in the reverse order that they were connected.**

1. Remove the jumper cable from the *ground* metal surface.

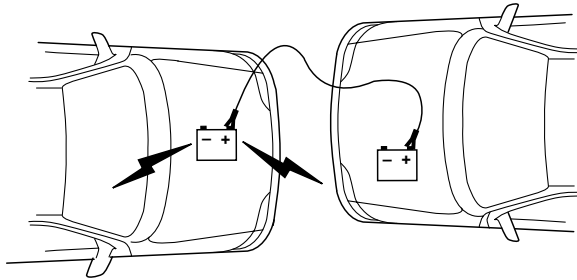
**Note:** In the illustrations, *lightning bolts* are used to designate the assisting (boosting) battery.



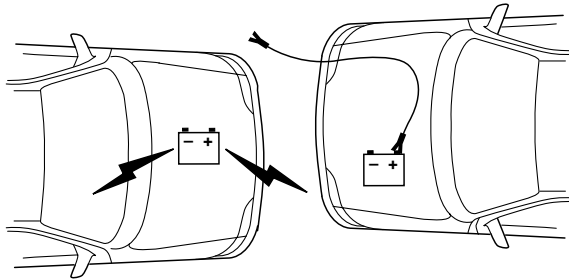
2. Remove the jumper cable on the negative (-) connection of the booster vehicle's battery.



## Roadside Emergencies



3. Remove the jumper cable from the positive (+) terminal of the booster vehicle's battery.

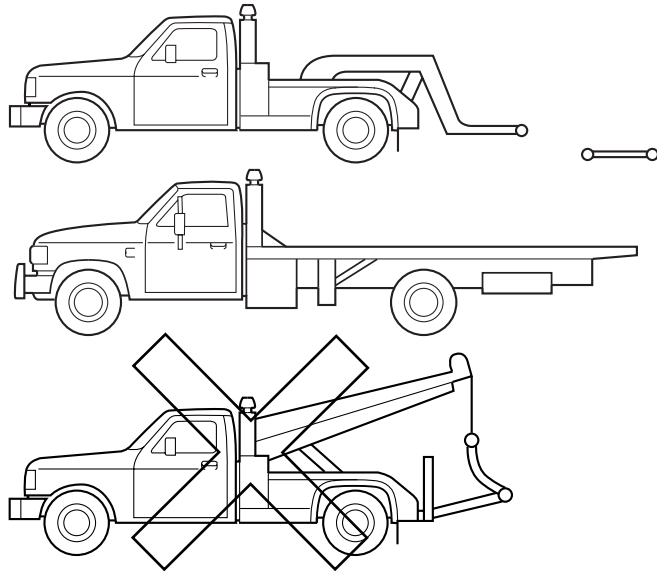


4. Remove the jumper cable from the positive (+) terminal of the disabled vehicle's battery.

After the disabled vehicle has been started and the jumper cables removed, allow it to idle for several minutes so the engine computer can *relearn* its idle conditions.

## Roadside Emergencies

### WRECKER TOWING



If you need to have your vehicle towed, contact a professional towing service or, if you are a member of a roadside assistance program, your roadside assistance service provider.

It is recommended that your vehicle be towed with a wheel lift and dollies or flatbed equipment. Do not tow with a slingbelt. Ford Motor Company has not approved a slingbelt towing procedure.

On FWD vehicles, if your vehicle is to be towed from the front, ensure proper wheel lift equipment is used to raise the front wheels off the ground. The rear wheels can be left on the ground when towed in this fashion.

If your vehicle is to be towed from the rear using wheel lift equipment, it is recommended that the front wheels (drive wheels) be placed on a dolly to prevent damage to the automatic transaxle.

On 4WD vehicles, it is **required** that your vehicle be towed with a wheel lift and dollies or flatbed equipment with all the wheels off the ground to prevent damage to the automatic transaxle, 4WD system or vehicle.

## Roadside Emergencies

**If the vehicle is towed by other means or incorrectly, vehicle damage may occur.**

In case of a roadside emergency with a disabled vehicle (without access to wheel dollies, car hauling trailer, or flatbed transport vehicle) your vehicle (regardless of transmission powertrain configuration) can be flat towed (all wheels on the ground) under the following conditions:

- Place the transmission in N (Neutral).
- Maximum distance is 50 miles (80 km).
- Maximum speed is not to exceed 35 mph (56 km/h).

Ford Motor Company produces a towing manual for all authorized tow truck operators. Have your tow truck operator refer to this manual for proper hook-up and towing procedures for your vehicle.

## Customer Assistance

### GETTING THE SERVICES YOU NEED

#### At home

You must take your Ford vehicle to an authorized dealer for warranty repairs. While any authorized dealer handling your vehicle line will provide warranty service, we recommend you return to your selling authorized dealer who wants to ensure your continued satisfaction. Please note that certain warranty repairs require special training and/or equipment, so not all authorized dealers are authorized to perform all warranty repairs. This means that, depending on the warranty repair needed, you may have to take your vehicle to another authorized dealer. A reasonable time must be allowed to perform a repair after taking your vehicle to the authorized dealer. Repairs will be made using Ford or Motorcraft parts, or remanufactured or other parts that are authorized by Ford.

If you have questions or concerns, or are unsatisfied with the service you are receiving, follow these steps:

1. Contact your Sales Representative or Service Advisor at your selling/servicing authorized dealer.
2. If your inquiry or concern remains unresolved, contact the Sales Manager, Service Manager or Customer Relations Manager.
3. If you require assistance or clarification on Ford Motor Company policies or procedures, please contact the Ford Customer Relationship Center at 1-800-392-3673 (FORD).

#### Away from home

If you own a Ford or Mercury vehicle and are away from home when your vehicle needs service, or if you need more help than the authorized dealer could provide, after following the steps described above, contact the Ford Customer Relationship Center to find an authorized dealer to help you.

In the United States:

Ford Motor Company  
Customer Relationship Center  
P.O. Box 6248  
Dearborn, MI 48121  
1-800-392-3673 (FORD)  
(TDD for the hearing impaired: 1-800-232-5952)  
[www.customersaskford.com](http://www.customersaskford.com)

228

## Customer Assistance

In Canada:  
Customer Relationship Centre  
Ford Motor Company of Canada, Limited  
P.O. Box 2000  
Oakville, Ontario L6J 5E4  
1-800-565-3673 (FORD)  
[www.ford.ca](http://www.ford.ca)

If you own a Lincoln vehicle and are away from home when your vehicle needs service, or if you need more help than the authorized dealer could provide, after following the steps described above, contact the Ford Customer Relationship Center to find an authorized dealer to help you.

In the United States:  
Ford Motor Company  
Customer Relationship Center  
P.O. Box 6248  
Dearborn, MI 48121  
1-800-521-4140  
(TDD for the hearing impaired: 1-800-232-5952)  
[www.customersaskford.com](http://www.customersaskford.com)

In Canada:  
Lincoln Centre  
Ford Motor Company of Canada, Limited  
P.O. Box 2000  
Oakville, Ontario L6J 5E4  
1-800-387-9333  
[www.lincolncanada.com](http://www.lincolncanada.com)

In order to help you service your Lincoln vehicle, please have the following information available when contacting the Lincoln Centre:

- Your telephone number (home and business)
- The name of the authorized dealer and the city where the authorized dealer is located
- The year and make of your vehicle
- The date of vehicle purchase
- The current odometer reading
- The vehicle identification number (VIN)

### **Additional Assistance**

If you still have a complaint involving a warranty dispute, you may wish to contact the Dispute Settlement Board (U.S.).

## Customer Assistance

In some states (in the U.S.) you must directly notify Ford in writing before pursuing remedies under your state's warranty laws. Ford is also allowed a final repair attempt in some states.

In the United States, a warranty dispute must be submitted to the Dispute Settlement Board before taking action under the Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act, or to the extent allowed by state law, before pursuing replacement or repurchase remedies provided by certain state laws. This dispute handling procedure is not required prior to enforcing state created rights or other rights which are independent of the Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act or state replacement or repurchase laws.

### IN CALIFORNIA (U.S. ONLY)

California Civil Code Section 1793.2(d) requires that, if a manufacturer or its representative is unable to repair a motor vehicle to conform to the vehicle's applicable express warranty after a reasonable number of attempts, the manufacturer shall be required to either replace the vehicle with one substantially identical or repurchase the vehicle and reimburse the buyer in an amount equal to the actual price paid or payable by the consumer (less a reasonable allowance for consumer use). The consumer has the right to choose whether to receive a refund or replacement vehicle.

California Civil Code Section 1793.22(b) presumes that the manufacturer has had a reasonable number of attempts to conform the vehicle to its applicable express warranties if, within the first 18 months of ownership of a new vehicle or the first 18,000 miles (29,000 km), whichever occurs first:

1. Two or more repair attempts are made on the same non-conformity likely to cause death or serious bodily injury OR
2. Four or more repair attempts are made on the same nonconformity (a defect or condition that substantially impairs the use, value or safety of the vehicle) OR
3. The vehicle is out of service for repair of nonconformities for a total of more than 30 calendar days (not necessarily all at one time)

In the case of 1 or 2 above, the consumer must also notify the manufacturer of the need for the repair of the nonconformity at the following address:

Ford Motor Company  
16800 Executive Plaza Drive  
Mail Drop 3NE-B  
Dearborn, MI 48126

230

**2006 Escape (204)**  
**Owners Guide (post-2002-fmt)**  
**USA (fus)**

## Customer Assistance

### **THE BETTER BUSINESS BUREAU (BBB) AUTO LINE PROGRAM (U.S. ONLY)**

Your satisfaction is important to Ford Motor Company and to your dealer. Experience has shown that our customers have been very successful in achieving satisfaction by following the three-step procedure outlined on the front page of the Warranty Guide. However, if your warranty concern has not been resolved using the three-step procedure, you may be eligible to participate in the BBB AUTO LINE program.

The BBB AUTO LINE program consists of two parts – mediation and arbitration. Initially, the BBB will try to resolve your question or concern through mediation. Mediation is a process through which a representative of the BBB will contact the parties and explore options for settlement of your claim. If mediation is not successful, customers with eligible claims may participate in the BBB AUTO LINE arbitration process. An arbitration hearing will be scheduled so that you can present your case in an informal setting before an impartial person. The arbitrator will consider the testimony provided and make a decision after the hearing. You are not bound by the decision but may choose to accept it. If you choose to accept the BBB AUTO LINE decision then Ford must abide by the accepted decision as well. If the arbitrator has decided in your favor and you accept the decision, the BBB AUTO LINE program will contact you to ensure that Ford has complied with the decision in a timely manner. Disputes submitted to the BBB AUTO LINE program are usually decided within forty days after you file your claim with the BBB.

To file a claim with the BBB AUTO LINE, you will be asked for your name and address, information about your vehicle, information about your concerns and any steps you have already taken to try to resolve them.

You can get more information by calling BBB AUTO LINE at 1-800-428-3718, or writing to:

BBB AUTO LINE  
4200 Wilson Boulevard, Suite 800  
Arlington, Virginia 22203-1833

**Note:** Ford Motor Company reserves the right to change eligibility limitations, modify procedures, or to discontinue this process at any time without notice and without obligation.

### **UTILIZING THE MEDIATION/ARBITRATION PROGRAM (CANADA ONLY)**

For vehicles delivered to authorized Canadian dealers. In those cases where you continue to feel that the efforts by Ford of Canada and the

## Customer Assistance

authorized dealer to resolve a factory-related vehicle service concern have been unsatisfactory, Ford of Canada participates in an impartial third party mediation/arbitration program administered by the Canadian Motor Vehicle Arbitration Plan (CAMVAP).

The CAMVAP program is a straight-forward and relatively speedy alternative to resolve a disagreement when all other efforts to produce a settlement have failed. This procedure is without cost to you and is designed to eliminate the need for lengthy and expensive legal proceedings.

In the CAMVAP program, impartial third-party arbitrators conduct hearings at mutually convenient times and places in an informal environment. These impartial arbitrators review the positions of the parties, make decisions and, when appropriate, render awards to resolve disputes. CAMVAP decisions are fast, fair, and final as the arbitrator's award is binding both to you and Ford of Canada.

CAMVAP services are available in all territories and provinces. For more information, without charge or obligation, call your CAMVAP Provincial Administrator directly at 1-800-207-0685.

### FORD EXTENDED SERVICE PLAN

You can get more protection for your new car or light truck by purchasing Ford Extended Service Plan (Ford ESP) coverage. It provides the following:

- Benefits during the warranty period depending on the plan you purchase (such as: reimbursement for rentals; coverage for certain maintenance and wear items).
- Protection against covered repair costs after your Bumper-to-Bumper Warranty expires.

You may purchase Ford ESP from any participating authorized dealer. There are several plans available in various time, distance and deductible combinations which can be tailored to fit your own driving needs. Ford ESP also offers reimbursement benefits for towing and rental coverage.

When you buy Ford ESP, you receive Peace-of-Mind protection throughout the United States and Canada, provided by a network of more than 4,600 participating authorized dealers.

If you did not take advantage of the Ford Extended Service Plan at the time of purchasing your vehicle, you may still be eligible. Since this information is subject to change, please ask your authorized dealer for complete details about Ford Extended Service Plan coverage options, or visit the Ford ESP website at [www.ford-esp.com](http://www.ford-esp.com).



## Customer Assistance

### GETTING ASSISTANCE OUTSIDE THE U.S. AND CANADA

Before exporting your vehicle to a foreign country, contact the appropriate foreign embassy or consulate. These officials can inform you of local vehicle registration regulations and where to find unleaded fuel.

If you cannot find unleaded fuel or can only get fuel with an anti-knock index lower than is recommended for your vehicle, contact a regional office or owner relations/customer relationship office.

The use of leaded fuel in your vehicle without proper conversion may damage the effectiveness of your emission control system and may cause engine knocking or serious engine damage. Ford Motor Company/Ford of Canada is not responsible for any damage caused by use of improper fuel. Using leaded fuel may also result in difficulty importing your vehicle back into the U.S.

If your vehicle must be serviced while you are traveling or living in Central America, the Caribbean, or the Middle East, contact the nearest authorized dealer. If the authorized dealer cannot help you, write or call:

FORD MOTOR COMPANY  
WORLDWIDE DIRECT MARKET OPERATIONS  
1555 Fairlane Drive  
Fairlane Business Park #3  
Allen Park, Michigan 48101  
U.S.A.  
Telephone: (313) 594-4857  
FAX: (313) 390-0804

If you are in another foreign country, contact the nearest authorized dealer. If the authorized dealer employees cannot help you, they can direct you to the nearest Ford affiliate office.

If you buy your vehicle in North America and then relocate outside of the U.S. or Canada, register your vehicle identification number (VIN) and new address with Ford Motor Company Worldwide Direct Market Operations.

**Customers in the U.S. should call 1-800-392-3673.**

### ORDERING ADDITIONAL OWNER'S LITERATURE

To order the publications in this portfolio, contact Helm, Incorporated at:

HELM, INCORPORATED  
P.O. Box 07150  
Detroit, Michigan 48207

## Customer Assistance

Or call:

**For a free publication catalog, order toll free: 1-800-782-4356**

Monday-Friday 8:00 a.m. - 6:00 p.m. EST

Helm, Incorporated can also be reached by their website:  
[www.helminc.com](http://www.helminc.com).

*(Items in this catalog may be purchased by credit card, check or money order.)*

### Obtaining a French owner's guide

French Owner's Guides can be obtained from your authorized dealer or by writing to Ford Motor Company of Canada, Limited, Service Publications, P.O. Box 1580, Station B, Mississauga, Ontario L4Y 4G3.

### REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS (U.S. ONLY)

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying Ford Motor Company.



If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or Ford Motor Company.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to <http://www.safercar.gov>; or write to:

Administrator  
NHTSA  
400 Seventh Street, SW  
Washington, D.C. 20590

You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from <http://www.safercar.gov>.

### WASHING THE EXTERIOR

Wash your vehicle regularly with cool or lukewarm water and a neutral pH shampoo, such as Motorcraft Detail Wash (ZC-3-A), which is available from your authorized dealer.

- Never use strong household detergents or soap, such as dish washing or laundry liquid. These products can discolor and spot painted surfaces.
- Never wash a vehicle that is “hot to the touch” or during exposure to strong, direct sunlight.
- Always use a clean sponge or car wash mitt with plenty of water for best results.
- Dry the vehicle with a chamois or soft terry cloth towel in order to eliminate water spotting.
- It is especially important to wash the vehicle regularly during the winter months, as dirt and road salt are difficult to remove and cause damage to the vehicle.
- Immediately remove items such as gasoline, diesel fuel, bird droppings and insect deposits because they can cause damage to the vehicle's paintwork and trim over time.
- Remove any exterior accessories, such as antennas, before entering a car wash.
- **Suntan lotions and insect repellents can damage any painted surface; if these substances come in contact with your vehicle, wash off as soon as possible.**

### WAXING

Applying Motorcraft Paint Sealant (ZC-45) to your vehicle every six months will assist in reducing minor scratches and paint damage.

- Wash the vehicle first.
- Do not use waxes that contain abrasives; use Motorcraft Premium Liquid Wax (ZC-53-A), which is available from your authorized dealer, or an equivalent quality product.
- Do not allow paint sealant to come in contact with any non-body (low-gloss black) colored trim, such as grained door handles, roof racks, bumpers, side moldings, mirror housings or the windshield cowl area. The paint sealant will “gray” or stain the parts over time.

### PAINT CHIPS

Your authorized dealer has touch-up paint and sprays to match your vehicle's color. Take your color code (printed on a sticker in the driver's door jamb) to your authorized dealer to ensure you get the correct color.

## Cleaning

- Remove particles such as bird droppings, tree sap, insect deposits, tar spots, road salt and industrial fallout before repairing paint chips.
- Always read the instructions before using the products.

### ALUMINUM WHEELS AND WHEEL COVERS

Aluminum wheels and wheel covers are coated with a clearcoat paint finish. In order to maintain their shine:

- Clean weekly with Motorcraft Wheel and Tire Cleaner (ZC-37-A), which is available from your authorized dealer. Heavy dirt and brake dust accumulation may require agitation with a sponge. Rinse thoroughly with a strong stream of water.
- Never apply any cleaning chemical to hot or warm wheel rims or covers.
- Some automatic car washes may cause damage to the finish on your wheel rims or covers. Chemical-strength cleaners, or cleaning chemicals, in combination with brush agitation to remove brake dust and dirt, could wear away the clearcoat finish over time.
- Do not use hydrofluoric acid-based or high caustic-based wheel cleaners, steel wool, fuels or strong household detergent.
- To remove tar and grease, use Motorcraft Bug and Tar Remover (ZC-42), available from your authorized dealer.

### ENGINE

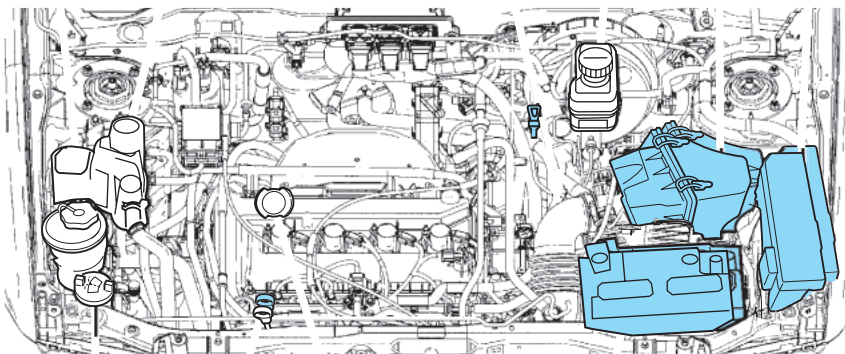
Engines are more efficient when they are clean because grease and dirt buildup keep the engine warmer than normal. When washing:

- Take care when using a power washer to clean the engine. The high-pressure fluid could penetrate the sealed parts and cause damage.
- Do not spray a hot engine with cold water to avoid cracking the engine block or other engine components.
- Spray Motorcraft Engine Shampoo and Degreaser (ZC-20) on all parts that require cleaning and pressure rinse clean.
- Cover the highlighted areas to prevent water damage when cleaning the engine.

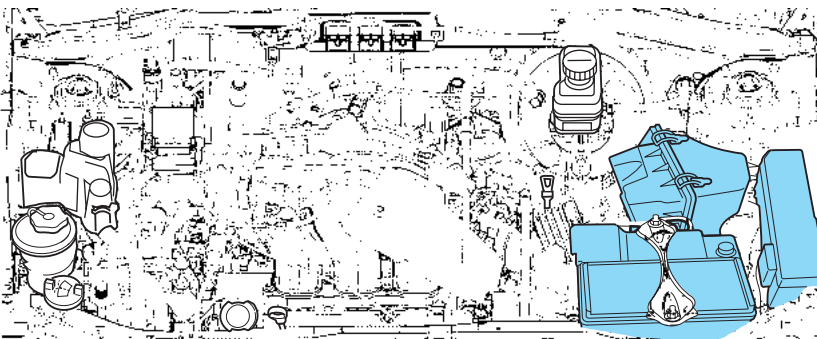
236

**2006 Escape (204)**  
**Owners Guide (post-2002-fmt)**  
**USA (fus)**

## Cleaning



- **2.3L I4**



- **3.0L DOHC V6 — Duratec Engine**

- Never wash or rinse the engine while it is running; water in the running engine may cause internal damage.

### **PLASTIC (NON-PAINTED) EXTERIOR PARTS**

Use only approved products to clean plastic parts. These products are available from your authorized dealer.

- For routine cleaning, use Motorcraft Detail Wash (ZC-3-A).
- If tar or grease spots are present, use Motorcraft Bug and Tar Remover (ZC-42).
- For plastic headlamp lenses, use Motorcraft Ultra Clear Spray Glass Cleaner (ZC-23).

## Cleaning

### WINDOWS AND WIPER BLADES

The windshield, rear and side windows and the wiper blades should be cleaned regularly. If the wipers do not wipe properly, substances on the vehicle's glass or the wiper blades may be the cause. These may include hot wax treatments used by commercial car washes, water repellant coatings, tree sap, or other organic contamination; these contaminants may cause squeaking or chatter noise from the blades, and streaking and smearing of the windshield. To clean these items, follow these tips:

- The windshield, rear windows and side windows may be cleaned with a non-abrasive cleaner such as Motorcraft Ultra-Clear Spray Glass Cleaner (ZC-23), available from your authorized dealer.
- The wiper blades can be cleaned with isopropyl (rubbing) alcohol or Motorcraft Premium Windshield Washer Concentrate (ZC-32-A), available from your authorized dealer. This washer fluid contains special solution in addition to alcohol which helps to remove the hot wax deposited on the wiper blade and windshield from automated car wash facilities. Be sure to replace wiper blades when they appear worn or do not function properly.
- Do not use abrasives, as they may cause scratches.
- Do not use fuel, kerosene, or paint thinner to clean any parts.

**Do not use sharp objects, such as a razor blade, to clean the inside of the rear window or to remove decals, as it may cause damage to the rear window defroster's heated grid lines.**

### INSTRUMENT PANEL AND CLUSTER LENS

Clean the instrument panel with a damp cloth, then with a clean, dry cloth, or use Motorcraft Dash & Vinyl Cleaner (ZC-38-A).

- Avoid cleaners or polish that increase the gloss of the upper portion of the instrument panel. The dull finish in this area helps protect the driver from undesirable windshield reflection.



Do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents when cleaning the steering wheel or instrument panel to avoid contamination of the airbag system.

- Be certain to wash or wipe your hands clean if you have been in contact with certain products such as insect repellent and suntan lotion in order to avoid possible damage to the interior painted surfaces.

## Cleaning

### INTERIOR TRIM

- Clean the interior trim areas with a damp cloth, then with a clean, dry cloth; you may also use Motorcraft Dash & Vinyl Cleaner (ZC-38-A).
- Do not use household or glass cleaners as these may damage the finish.

### INTERIOR

For fabric, carpets, cloth seats, safety belts and seats equipped with side airbags:

- Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
- Remove light stains and soil with Motorcraft Professional Strength Carpet & Upholstery Cleaner (ZC-54).
- If grease or tar is present on the material, spot-clean the area first with Motorcraft Spot and Stain Remover (ZC-14).
- If a ring forms on the fabric after spot cleaning, clean the entire area immediately (but do not oversaturate) or the ring will set.
- Do not use household cleaning products or glass cleaners, which can stain and discolor the fabric and affect the flame retardant abilities of the seat materials.



Do not use cleaning solvents, bleach or dye on the vehicle's safety belts, as these actions may weaken the belt webbing.



Do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents when cleaning the seat-mounted side airbag (if equipped). Such products could contaminate the side airbag system and affect performance of the side airbag in a collision.

### LEATHER SEATS (IF EQUIPPED)

Your leather seating surfaces have a clear, protective coating over the leather.

- To clean, use a soft cloth with Motorcraft Deluxe Leather and Vinyl Cleaner (ZC-11-A). Dry the area with a soft cloth.
- To help maintain its resiliency and color, use the Motorcraft Deluxe Leather Care Kit (ZC-11-D), available from your authorized dealer.

## Cleaning

- Do not use household cleaning products, alcohol solutions, solvents or cleaners intended for rubber, vinyl and plastics, or oil/petroleum-based leather conditioners. These products may cause premature wearing of the clear, protective coating.

**Note:** In some instances, color or dye transfer can occur when wet clothing comes in contact with leather upholstery. If this occurs, the leather should be cleaned immediately to avoid permanent staining.

### UNDERBODY

Flush the complete underside of your vehicle frequently. Keep body and door drain holes free from packed dirt.

### FORD AND LINCOLN MERCURY CAR CARE PRODUCTS

Your Ford or Lincoln Mercury authorized dealer has many quality products available to clean your vehicle and protect its finishes. These quality products have been specifically engineered to fulfill your automotive needs; they are custom designed to complement the style and appearance of your vehicle. Each product is made from high quality materials that meet or exceed rigid specifications. For best results, use the following products or products of equivalent quality:

Motorcraft Bug and Tar Remover (ZC-42)  
Motorcraft Car Care Kit (ZC-26)  
Motorcraft Car Wash (Canada only) (CXC-21)  
Motorcraft Custom Bright Metal Cleaner (ZC-15)  
Motorcraft Custom Clear Coat Polish (ZC-8-A)  
Motorcraft Custom Vinyl Protectant (U.S. only) (ZC-40-A)  
Motorcraft Dash and Vinyl Cleaner (ZC-38-A)  
Motorcraft Deluxe Leather and Vinyl Cleaner (U.S. only) (ZC-11-A)  
Motorcraft Detail Wash (ZC-3-A)  
Motorcraft Dusting Cloth (ZC-24)  
Motorcraft Engine Shampoo and Degreaser (U.S. only) (ZC-20)  
Motorcraft Engine Shampoo (Canada only) (CXC-66-A)  
Motorcraft One Step Wash and Wax Concentrate (ZC-6-A)  
Motorcraft Paint Sealant (ZC-45)  
Motorcraft Premium Car Wash Concentrate (U.S. only) (ZC-17-B)  
Motorcraft Premium Glass Cleaner (Canada only) (CXC-100)

240

**2006 Escape (204)**  
**Owners Guide (post-2002-fmt)**  
**USA (fus)**



## Cleaning

Motorcraft Premium Liquid Wax (ZC-53-A)  
Motorcraft Premium Windshield Washer Concentrate (ZC-32-A)  
Motorcraft Professional Strength Carpet & Upholstery Cleaner (ZC-54)  
Motorcraft Spot and Stain Remover (U.S. only) (ZC-14)  
Motorcraft Tire Clean and Shine (ZC-28)  
Motorcraft Triple Clean (U.S. only) (ZC-13)  
Motorcraft Ultra-Clear Spray Glass Cleaner (ZC-23)  
Motorcraft Vinyl Cleaner (Canada only) (CXC-93)  
Motorcraft Vinyl Conditioner (Canada only) (CXC-94)  
Motorcraft Wheel and Tire Cleaner (ZC-37-A)

## Maintenance and Specifications

### SERVICE RECOMMENDATIONS

To help you service your vehicle:

- We highlight do-it-yourself items in the engine compartment for easy location.
- We provide *scheduled maintenance information* which makes tracking routine service easy.

If your vehicle requires professional service, your authorized dealer can provide the necessary parts and service. Check your *Warranty Guide/Owner Information Guide* to find out which parts and services are covered.

Use only recommended fuels, lubricants, fluids and service parts conforming to specifications. Motorcraft parts are designed and built to provide the best performance in your vehicle.

### PRECAUTIONS WHEN SERVICING YOUR VEHICLE

- Do not work on a hot engine.
- Make sure that nothing gets caught in moving parts.
- Do not work on a vehicle with the engine running in an enclosed space, unless you are sure you have enough ventilation.
- Keep all open flames and other lit material away from the battery and all fuel related parts.

#### Working with the engine off

- Automatic transmission:
  1. Set the parking brake and shift to P (Park).
  2. Turn off the engine and remove the key.
  3. Block the wheels.
- Manual transmission:
  1. Set the parking brake, depress the clutch and place the gearshift in 1 (First).
  2. Turn off the engine and remove the key.
  3. Block the wheels.

#### Working with the engine on

- Automatic transmission:
  1. Set the parking brake and shift to P (Park).
  2. Block the wheels.

242

## Maintenance and Specifications

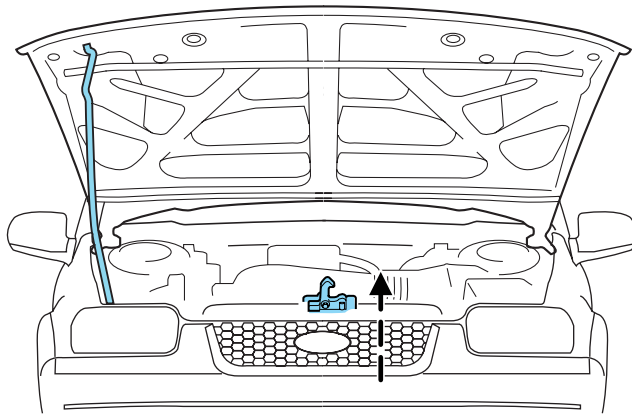
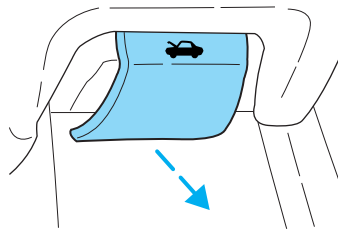
- Manual transmission:

1. Set the parking brake, depress the clutch and place the gearshift in N (Neutral).
2. Block the wheels.

**Note:** Do not start your engine with the air cleaner removed and do not remove it while the engine is running.

### OPENING THE HOOD

1. Inside the vehicle, pull the hood release handle located under the bottom of the instrument panel.

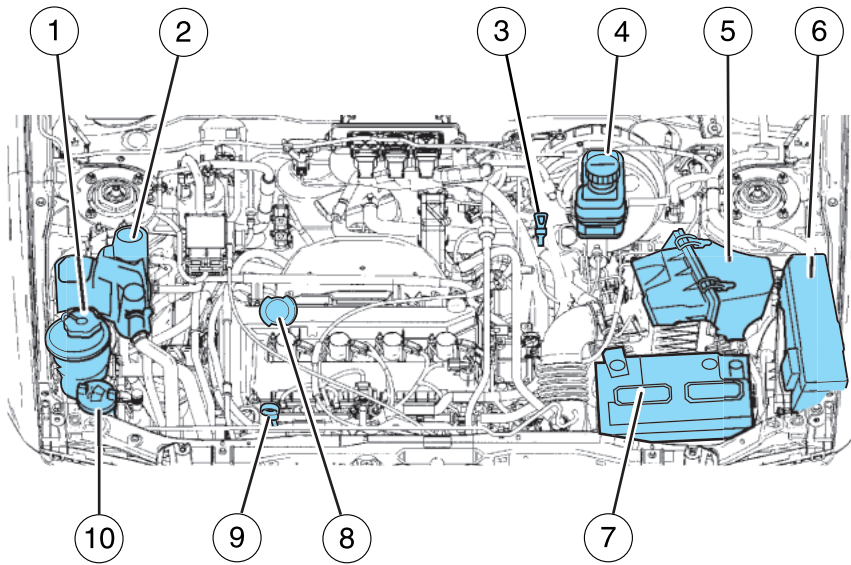


2. At the front of the vehicle, lift up on the auxiliary latch handle located in the center between the hood and the grille.
3. Lift the hood open and secure it with the prop rod.

## Maintenance and Specifications

### IDENTIFYING COMPONENTS IN THE ENGINE COMPARTMENT

#### 2.3L I4 engine



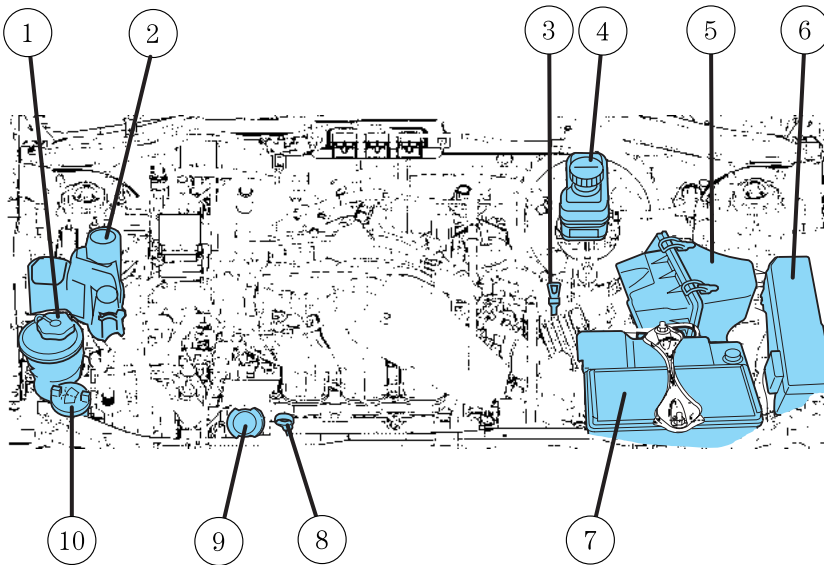
1. Power steering fluid reservoir
2. Engine coolant reservoir
3. Automatic transmission dipstick
4. Brake/Clutch fluid reservoir
5. Air filter assembly
6. Power distribution box
7. Battery
8. Engine oil filler cap
9. Engine oil dipstick
10. Windshield washer fluid reservoir

244

2006 *Escape* (204)  
Owners Guide (post-2002-fmt)  
USA (fus)

## Maintenance and Specifications

### 3.0L DOHC V6 Duratec engine

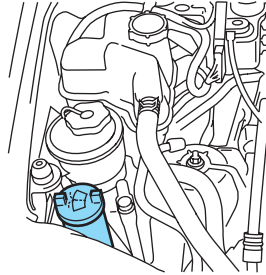


1. Power steering fluid reservoir
2. Engine coolant reservoir
3. Automatic transmission fluid dipstick
4. Brake fluid reservoir
5. Air filter assembly
6. Power distribution box
7. Battery
8. Engine oil dipstick
9. Engine oil filler cap
10. Windshield washer fluid reservoir

## Maintenance and Specifications

### WINDSHIELD WASHER FLUID

Add fluid to fill the reservoir if the level is low. In very cold weather, do not fill the reservoir completely.



Only use a washer fluid that meets Ford specifications. Do not use any special washer fluid such as windshield water repellent type fluid or bug wash. They may cause squeaking, chatter noise, streaking and smearing. Refer to *Lubricant specifications* in this chapter.

State or local regulations on volatile organic compounds may restrict the use of methanol, a common windshield washer antifreeze additive. Washer fluids containing non-methanol antifreeze agents should be used only if they provide cold weather protection without damaging the vehicle's paint finish, wiper blades or washer system.



If you operate your vehicle in temperatures below 40° F (4.5°C), use washer fluid with antifreeze protection. Failure to use washer fluid with antifreeze protection in cold weather could result in impaired windshield vision and increase the risk of injury or accident.

**Note:** Do not put washer fluid in the engine coolant reservoir. Washer fluid placed in the cooling system may harm engine and cooling system components.

### Checking and adding washer fluid for the liftgate

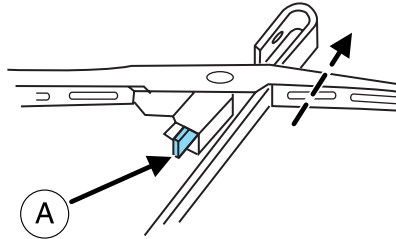
Washer fluid for the liftgate is supplied by the same reservoir as the windshield.

## Maintenance and Specifications

### CHANGING THE WIPER BLADES

1. Pull the wiper blade and arm away from the glass. Turn the blade at a right angle to the arm. Push the lock tab (A) to release the blade from the arm loop and pull the blade down toward the windshield to remove it from the arm.

2. Attach the new blade to the arm loop and pull it into place until a click is heard.



Replace wiper blades at least once per year for optimum performance.

Poor wiper quality can be improved by cleaning the wiper blades and the windshield, refer to *Windows and wiper blades* in the *Cleaning* chapter.

To prolong the life of the wiper blades, it is highly recommended to scrape off the ice on the windshield before turning on the wipers. The layer of ice has many sharp edges and can damage the micro edge of the wiper rubber element.

### ENGINE OIL

#### Checking the engine oil

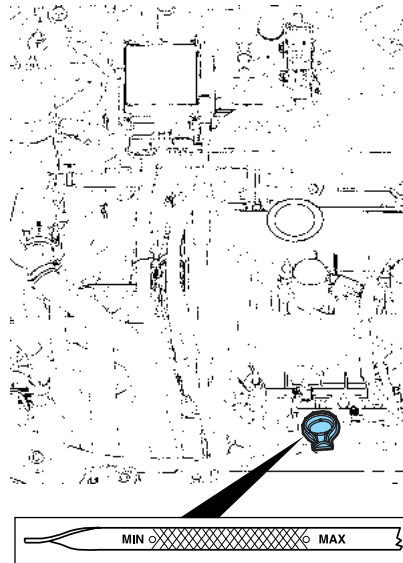
Refer to *scheduled maintenance information* for the appropriate intervals for checking the engine oil.

1. Make sure the vehicle is on level ground.
2. Turn the engine off and wait a few minutes for the oil to drain into the oil pan.
3. Set the parking brake and ensure the gearshift is securely latched in P (Park) (automatic transmissions) or 1 (First) (manual transmissions).
4. Open the hood. Protect yourself from engine heat.

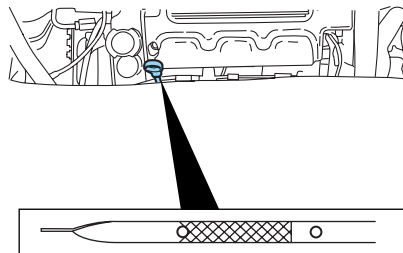
## Maintenance and Specifications

5. Locate and carefully remove the engine oil level indicator (dipstick).

- 2.3L I4 engine



- 3.0L DOHC V6 Duratec engine



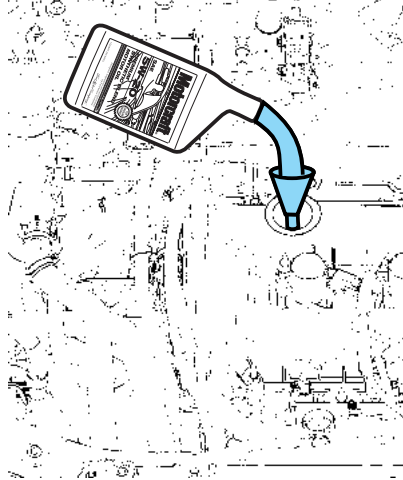
6. Wipe the indicator clean. Insert the indicator fully, then remove it again.

- If the oil level is within the MIN and MAX marks or the lower and upper holes, the oil level is acceptable. **DO NOT ADD OIL.**
- If the oil level is below the MIN mark or the lower hole, engine **oil must be added** to raise the level within the normal operating range.

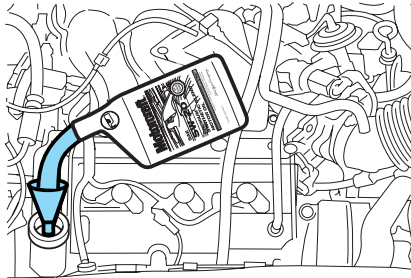


## Maintenance and Specifications

- 2.3L I4 engine



- 3.0L DOHC V6 Duratec engine



- If required, add engine oil to the engine. Refer to *Adding engine oil* in this chapter.
  - **Do not overfill the engine with oil. Oil levels above the MAX mark or upper hole may cause engine damage.** If the engine is overfilled, some oil must be removed from the engine by an authorized dealer.
7. Put the indicator back in and ensure it is fully seated.

### Adding engine oil

1. Check the engine oil. For instructions, refer to *Checking the engine oil* in this chapter.

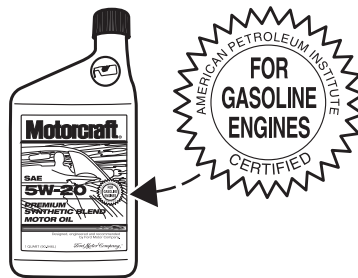
## Maintenance and Specifications

2. If the engine oil level is not within the normal range, add only certified engine oil of the recommended viscosity. Remove the engine oil filler cap and use a funnel to pour the engine oil into the opening.
3. Recheck the engine oil level. Make sure the oil level is not above the MAX or FULL mark on the engine oil level indicator (dipstick).
4. Install the indicator and ensure it is fully seated.
5. Fully install the engine oil filler cap by turning the filler cap clockwise 1/4 of a turn until it is seated.

**To avoid possible oil loss, DO NOT operate the vehicle with the engine oil level indicator and/or the engine oil filler cap removed.**

### Engine oil and filter recommendations

Look for this certification trademark.



### Use SAE 5W-20 engine oil.

Only use oils “Certified For Gasoline Engines” by the American Petroleum Institute (API). An oil with this trademark symbol conforms to the current engine and emission system protection standards and fuel economy requirements of the International Lubricant Standardization and Approval Committee (ILSAC), comprised of U.S. and Japanese automobile manufacturers.

To protect your engine’s warranty use Motorcraft SAE 5W-20 or an equivalent 5W-20 oil meeting Ford specification WSS-M2C930-A. **SAE 5W-20 oil provides optimum fuel economy and durability performance meeting all requirements for your vehicle’s engine.**

Do not use supplemental engine oil additives, cleaners or other engine treatments. They are unnecessary and could lead to engine damage that is not covered by Ford warranty.

Change your engine oil and filter according to the appropriate schedule listed in *scheduled maintenance information*.

250

2006 Escape (204)  
Owners Guide (post-2002-fmt)  
USA (fus)

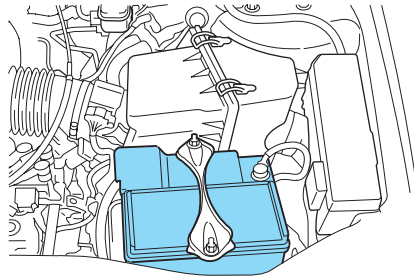
## Maintenance and Specifications

Ford production and aftermarket (Motorcraft) oil filters are designed for added engine protection and long life. If a replacement oil filter is used that does not meet Ford material and design specifications, start-up engine noises or knock may be experienced.

It is recommended you use the appropriate Motorcraft oil filter (or another brand meeting Ford specifications) for your engine application.

### BATTERY

Your vehicle is equipped with a Motorcraft maintenance-free battery which normally does not require additional water during its life of service.



However, for severe usage or in high temperature climates, check the battery electrolyte level. Refer to *scheduled maintenance information* for the service interval schedules.

**Keep the electrolyte level in each cell up to the “level indicator”. Do not overfill the battery cells.**


If the electrolyte level in the battery is low, you can add plain tap water to the battery, as long as you do not use hard water (water with a high mineral or alkali content). If possible, however, try to only fill the battery cells with distilled water. If the battery needs water often, have the charging system checked.


**If your battery has a cover/shield, make sure it is reinstalled after the battery has been cleaned or replaced.**


For longer, trouble-free operation, keep the top of the battery clean and dry. Also, make certain the battery cables are always tightly fastened to the battery terminals.

If you see any corrosion on the battery or terminals, remove the cables from the terminals and clean with a wire brush. You can neutralize the acid with a solution of baking soda and water.

## Maintenance and Specifications

 Batteries normally produce explosive gases which can cause personal injury. Therefore, do not allow flames, sparks or lighted substances to come near the battery. When working near the battery, always shield your face and protect your eyes. Always provide proper ventilation.

 When lifting a plastic-cased battery, excessive pressure on the end walls could cause acid to flow through the vent caps, resulting in personal injury and/or damage to the vehicle or battery. Lift the battery with a battery carrier or with your hands on opposite corners.

 Keep batteries out of reach of children. Batteries contain sulfuric acid. Avoid contact with skin, eyes or clothing. Shield your eyes when working near the battery to protect against possible splashing of acid solution. In case of acid contact with skin or eyes, flush immediately with water for a minimum of 15 minutes and get prompt medical attention. If acid is swallowed, call a physician immediately.

 Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds. **Wash hands after handling.**

Because your vehicle's engine is electronically controlled by a computer, some control conditions are maintained by power from the battery. When the battery is disconnected or a new battery is installed, the engine must relearn its idle and fuel trim strategy for optimum driveability and performance. To begin this process:

1. With the vehicle at a complete stop, set the parking brake.
  2. Put the gearshift in P (Park), turn off all accessories and start the engine.
  3. Run the engine until it reaches normal operating temperature.
  4. Allow the engine to idle for at least one minute.
  5. Turn the A/C on and allow the engine to idle for at least one minute.
  6. Drive the vehicle to complete the relearning process.
- The vehicle may need to be driven 10 miles (16 km) or more to relearn the idle and fuel trim strategy.
  - **If you do not allow the engine to relearn its idle trim, the idle quality of your vehicle may be adversely affected until the idle trim is eventually relearned.**

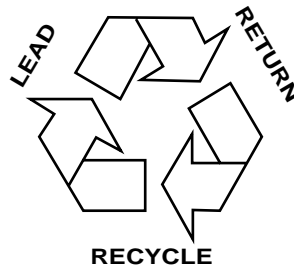
252

## Maintenance and Specifications

When the battery is disconnected or a new battery installed, the transmission must relearn its adaptive strategy. As a result of this, the transmission may shift firmly. This operation is considered normal and will not affect function or durability of the transmission. Over time the adaptive learning process will fully update transmission operation to its optimum shift feel.

If the battery has been disconnected or a new battery has been installed, the clock and the preset radio stations must be reset once the battery is reconnected.

- Always dispose of automotive batteries in a responsible manner. Follow your local authorized standards for disposal. Call your local authorized recycling center to find out more about recycling automotive batteries.



### ENGINE COOLANT

#### Checking engine coolant

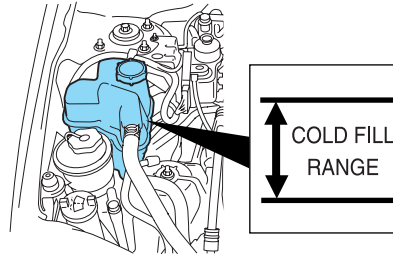
The concentration and level of engine coolant should be checked at the intervals listed in *scheduled maintenance information*. The coolant concentration should be maintained at 50/50 coolant and distilled water, which equates to a freeze point of -34°F (-36°C). Coolant concentration testing is possible with a hydrometer or antifreeze tester (such as the Rotunda Battery and Antifreeze Tester, 014-R1060). The level of coolant should be maintained at the "FULL COLD" level or within the "COLD FILL RANGE" in the coolant reservoir. If the level falls below, add coolant per the instructions in the *Adding engine coolant* section.

Your vehicle was factory-filled with a 50/50 engine coolant and water concentration. If the concentration of coolant falls below 40% or above 60%, the engine parts could become damaged or not work properly. **A 50-50 mixture of coolant and water provides the following:**

- **Freeze protection down to -34°F (-36°C).**
- **Boiling protection up to 265°F (129°C).**
- **Protection against rust and other forms of corrosion.**
- **Enables calibrated gauges to work properly.**

## Maintenance and Specifications

When the engine is cold, check the level of the engine coolant in the reservoir.



- The engine coolant should be at the “FULL COLD” level or within the “COLD FILL RANGE” as listed on the engine coolant reservoir (depending upon application).
- Refer to *scheduled maintenance information* for service interval schedules.
- Be sure to read and understand *Precautions when servicing your vehicle* in this chapter.

If the engine coolant has not been checked at the recommended interval, the engine coolant reservoir may become low or empty. If the reservoir is low or empty, add engine coolant to the reservoir. Refer to *Adding engine coolant* in this chapter.

**Note:** Automotive fluids are not interchangeable; do not use engine coolant, antifreeze or windshield washer fluid outside of its specified function and vehicle location.

### Adding engine coolant

When adding coolant, make sure it is a 50/50 mixture of engine coolant and distilled water. Add the mixture to the coolant reservoir, **when the engine is cool**, until the appropriate fill level is obtained.



Do not add engine coolant when the engine is hot. Steam and scalding liquids released from a hot cooling system can burn you badly. Also, you can be burned if you spill coolant on hot engine parts.



Do not put engine coolant in the windshield washer fluid container. If sprayed on the windshield, engine coolant could make it difficult to see through the windshield.

## Maintenance and Specifications

- **Add Motorcraft Premium Gold Engine Coolant (yellow-colored), VC-7-A (U.S., except CA, OR and NM), VC-7-B (CA, OR and NM), meeting Ford Specification WSS-M97B51-A1.**

**Note:** Use of Motorcraft Cooling System Stop Leak Pellets, VC-6, may darken the color of Motorcraft Premium Gold Engine Coolant from yellow to golden tan.

- **Do not add/mix an orange-colored, extended life coolant such as Motorcraft Specialty Orange Engine Coolant, VC-2 and VC-3 (US) or CXC-209 (Canada), meeting Ford specification WSS-M97B44-D with the factory-filled coolant.** Mixing Motorcraft Specialty Orange Engine Coolant or any orange-colored extended life product with your factory filled coolant can result in degraded corrosion protection.
- A large amount of water without engine coolant may be added, in case of emergency, to reach a vehicle service location. In this instance, the cooling system must be drained and refilled with a 50/50 mixture of engine coolant and distilled water as soon as possible. Water alone (without engine coolant) can cause engine damage from corrosion, overheating or freezing.
- **Do not use alcohol, methanol, brine or any engine coolants mixed with alcohol or methanol antifreeze (coolant).** Alcohol and other liquids can cause engine damage from overheating or freezing.
- **Do not add extra inhibitors or additives to the coolant.** These can be harmful and compromise the corrosion protection of the engine coolant.

For vehicles with overflow coolant systems with a non-pressurized cap on the coolant recovery system, add coolant to the coolant recovery reservoir when the engine is cool. Add the proper mixture of coolant and water to the "FULL COLD" level. For all other vehicles which have a coolant degas system with a pressurized cap, or if it is necessary to remove the coolant pressure relief cap on the radiator of a vehicle with an overflow system, follow these steps to add engine coolant.



To reduce the risk of personal injury, make sure the engine is cool before unscrewing the coolant pressure relief cap. The cooling system is under pressure; steam and hot liquid can come out forcefully when the cap is loosened slightly.

1. Before you begin, turn the engine off and let it cool.

## Maintenance and Specifications

2. When the engine is cool, wrap a thick cloth around the coolant pressure relief cap on the coolant reservoir (a translucent plastic bottle). Slowly turn cap counterclockwise (left) until pressure begins to release.
3. Step back while the pressure releases.
4. When you are sure that all the pressure has been released, use the cloth to turn it counterclockwise and remove the cap.
5. Fill the coolant reservoir slowly with the proper coolant mixture (see above), to within the "COLD FILL RANGE" or the "FULL COLD" level on the reservoir. If you removed the radiator cap in an overflow system, fill the radiator until the coolant is visible and radiator is almost full.
6. Replace the cap. Turn until tightly installed. (Cap must be tightly installed to prevent coolant loss.)

After any coolant has been added, check the coolant concentration (refer to *Checking engine coolant*). If the concentration is not 50/50 (protection to -34° F/-36° C), drain some coolant and adjust the concentration. It may take several drains and additions to obtain a 50/50 coolant concentration.

Whenever coolant has been added, the coolant level in the coolant reservoir should be checked the next few times you drive the vehicle. If necessary, add enough 50/50 concentration of engine coolant and distilled water to bring the liquid level to the proper level.

If you have to add more than 1.0 quart (1.0 liter) of engine coolant per month, have your authorized dealer check the engine cooling system. Your cooling system may have a leak. Operating an engine with a low level of coolant can result in engine overheating and possible engine damage.

### Recycled engine coolant

Ford Motor Company does NOT recommend the use of recycled engine coolant in vehicles originally equipped with Motorcraft Premium Gold Engine Coolant since a Ford-approved recycling process is not yet available.



Used engine coolant should be disposed of in an appropriate manner. Follow your community's regulations and standards for recycling and disposing of automotive fluids.

### Coolant refill capacity

To find out how much fluid your vehicle's cooling system can hold, refer to *Refill capacities* in this section.



## Maintenance and Specifications

Fill your engine coolant reservoir as outlined in *Adding engine coolant* in this section.

### Severe climates

If you drive in extremely cold climates (less than -34° F [-36° C ]):

- **It may be necessary to increase the coolant concentration above 50%.**
- **NEVER increase the coolant concentration above 60%.**
- **Increased engine coolant concentrations above 60% will decrease the overheat protection characteristics of the engine coolant and may cause engine damage.**
- **Refer to the chart on the coolant container to ensure the coolant concentration in your vehicle will provide adequate freeze protection at the temperatures in which you drive in the winter months.**

If you drive in extremely hot climates:

- **It is still necessary to maintain the coolant concentration above 40%.**
- **NEVER decrease the coolant concentration below 40%.**
- **Decreased engine coolant concentrations below 40% will decrease the corrosion protection characteristics of the engine coolant and may cause engine damage.**
- **Decreased engine coolant concentrations below 40% will decrease the freeze protection characteristics of the engine coolant and may cause engine damage.**
- **Refer to the chart on the coolant container to ensure the coolant concentration in your vehicle will provide adequate protection at the temperatures in which you drive.**

Vehicles driven year-round in non-extreme climates should use a 50/50 mixture of engine coolant and distilled water for optimum cooling system and engine protection.


### What you should know about fail-safe cooling (2.3L I4 engine only)

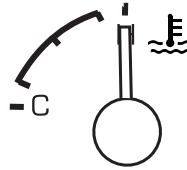
If the engine coolant supply is depleted, this feature allows the vehicle to be driven temporarily before incremental component damage is incurred. The “fail-safe” distance depends on ambient temperatures, vehicle load and terrain.

## Maintenance and Specifications

### **How fail-safe cooling works**

If the engine begins to overheat:

- The engine coolant temperature gauge will move to the red (hot) area.
- The  indicator light will illuminate.
- HIGH ENGINE TEMPERATURE will be displayed in the message center.



If the engine reaches a preset over-temperature condition, the engine will automatically switch to alternating cylinder operation. Each disabled cylinder acts as an air pump and cools the engine.

When this occurs the vehicle will still operate. However:

- The engine power will be limited.
- The air conditioning system will be disabled.

Continued operation will increase the engine temperature and the engine will completely shut down, causing steering and braking effort to increase.

Once the engine temperature cools, the engine can be re-started. Take your vehicle to an authorized dealer as soon as possible to minimize engine damage.

### **When fail-safe mode is activated**

You have limited engine power when in the fail-safe mode, so drive the vehicle with caution. The vehicle will not be able to maintain high-speed operation and the engine will run rough. Remember that the engine is capable of completely shutting down automatically to prevent engine damage, therefore:

1. Pull off the road as soon as safely possible and turn off the engine.
2. Arrange for the vehicle to be taken to an authorized dealer.
3. If this is not possible, wait a short period for the engine to cool.
4. Check the coolant level and replenish if low.



Never remove the coolant reservoir cap while the engine is running or hot.

5. Re-start the engine and take your vehicle to an authorized dealer.

258

2006 Escape (204)  
Owners Guide (post-2002-fmt)  
USA (fus)

## Maintenance and Specifications

**Driving the vehicle without repairing the engine problem increases the chance of engine damage. Take your vehicle to an authorized dealer as soon as possible.**

### FUEL FILTER

For fuel filter replacement, see your authorized dealer. Refer to *scheduled maintenance information* for the appropriate intervals for changing the fuel filter.

**Replace the fuel filter with an authorized Motorcraft part. The customer warranty may be void for any damage to the fuel system if an authorized Motorcraft fuel filter is not used.**

### WHAT YOU SHOULD KNOW ABOUT AUTOMOTIVE FUELS

#### Important safety precautions



Do not overfill the fuel tank. The pressure in an overfilled tank may cause leakage and lead to fuel spray and fire.



The fuel system may be under pressure. If the fuel filler cap is venting vapor or if you hear a hissing sound, wait until it stops before completely removing the fuel filler cap. Otherwise, fuel may spray out and injure you or others.



If you do not use the proper fuel filler cap, excessive pressure or vacuum in the fuel tank may damage the fuel system or cause the fuel cap to disengage in a collision, which may result in possible personal injury.



Automotive fuels can cause serious injury or death if misused or mishandled.




Gasoline may contain benzene, which is a cancer-causing agent.


## Maintenance and Specifications

Observe the following guidelines when handling automotive fuel:

- Extinguish all smoking materials and any open flames before refueling your vehicle.
- Always turn off the vehicle before refueling.
- Automotive fuels can be harmful or fatal if swallowed. Fuel such as gasoline is highly toxic and if swallowed can cause death or permanent injury. If fuel is swallowed, call a physician immediately, even if no symptoms are immediately apparent. The toxic effects of fuel may not be visible for hours.
- Avoid inhaling fuel vapors. Inhaling too much fuel vapor of any kind can lead to eye and respiratory tract irritation. In severe cases, excessive or prolonged breathing of fuel vapor can cause serious illness and permanent injury.
- Avoid getting fuel liquid in your eyes. If fuel is splashed in the eyes, remove contact lenses (if worn), flush with water for 15 minutes and seek medical attention. Failure to seek proper medical attention could lead to permanent injury.
- Fuels can also be harmful if absorbed through the skin. If fuel is splashed on the skin and/or clothing, promptly remove contaminated clothing and wash skin thoroughly with soap and water. Repeated or prolonged skin contact with fuel liquid or vapor causes skin irritation.
- Be particularly careful if you are taking “Antabuse” or other forms of disulfiram for the treatment of alcoholism. Breathing gasoline vapors, or skin contact could cause an adverse reaction. In sensitive individuals, serious personal injury or sickness may result. If fuel is splashed on the skin, promptly wash skin thoroughly with soap and water. Consult a physician immediately if you experience an adverse reaction.



 When refueling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the filler neck. Never smoke while refueling. Fuel vapor is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Care should be taken to avoid inhaling excess fumes.

 The flow of fuel through a fuel pump nozzle can produce static electricity, which can cause a fire if fuel is pumped into an ungrounded fuel container.

## Maintenance and Specifications

### Refueling



Fuel vapor burns violently and a fuel fire can cause severe injuries. To help avoid injuries to you and others:

- Read and follow all the instructions on the pump island;
- Turn off your engine when you are refueling;
- Do not smoke if you are near fuel or refueling your vehicle;
- Keep sparks, flames and smoking materials away from fuel;
- Stay outside your vehicle and do not leave the fuel pump unattended when refueling your vehicle — this is against the law in some places;
- Keep children away from the fuel pump; never let children pump fuel

Use the following guidelines to avoid static build-up when filling an ungrounded fuel container:

- Place approved fuel container on the ground.
- DO NOT fill a fuel container while it is in the vehicle (including the cargo area).
- Keep the fuel pump nozzle in contact with the fuel container while filling.
- DO NOT use a device that would hold the fuel pump handle in the fill position.

### Fuel Filler Cap

Your fuel tank filler cap has an indexed design with a 1/4 turn on/off feature.

When fueling your vehicle:

1. Turn the engine/ignition switch to the off position.
2. Carefully turn the filler cap counterclockwise until it spins off.
3. To install the cap, align the lugs on the cap with the threads on the filler pipe.
4. Turn the filler cap clockwise until it clicks at least once.

After refueling, if the “CHECK FUEL CAP” indicator comes on and stays on when you start the engine, the fuel filler cap may not be properly installed. Turn off the engine, remove the fuel filler cap, align the cap properly and reinstall it securely. The “CHECK FUEL CAP” indicator should turn off after three driving cycles with the fuel filler cap properly installed. A driving cycle consists of a cold engine start-up followed by mixed city/highway driving.

## Maintenance and Specifications

**If you must replace the fuel filler cap, replace it with a fuel filler cap that is designed for your vehicle. The customer warranty may be void for any damage to the fuel tank or fuel system if the correct genuine Ford or Motorcraft fuel filler cap is not used.**



The fuel system may be under pressure. Remove fuel filler cap slowly. Otherwise, fuel may spray out and injure you or others.



If you do not use the proper fuel filler cap, excessive vacuum in the fuel tank may damage the fuel system or cause the fuel cap to disengage in a collision, which may result in possible personal injury.

**FORD RECOMMENDS BP**



### Choosing the right fuel

Use only UNLEADED FUEL. The use of leaded fuel is prohibited by law and could damage your vehicle.

Your vehicle was not designed to use fuel or fuel additives with metallic compounds, including manganese-based additives. Studies indicate that these additives can cause your vehicle's emission control system to deteriorate more rapidly. In Canada, premium grade fuel generally contains more metallic additives than regular grade fuel. We recommend using regular grade fuel. In Canada, many fuels contain metallic additives, but fuels free of such additives may be available; check with your local fuel dealer.

Do not use fuel containing methanol. It can damage critical fuel system components.

Repairs to correct the effects of using a fuel for which your vehicle was not designed may not be covered by your warranty.

262

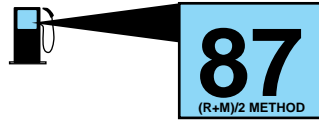
*2006 Escape (204)*  
*Owners Guide (post-2002-fmt)*  
*USA (fus)*

## Maintenance and Specifications

### Octane recommendations

Your vehicle is designed to use “Regular” unleaded gasoline with pump (R+M)/2 octane rating of 87.

We do not recommend the use of gasolines labeled as “Regular” that are sold with octane ratings of 86 or lower in high altitude areas.



Do not be concerned if your engine sometimes knocks lightly. However, if it knocks heavily under most driving conditions while you are using fuel with the recommended octane rating, see your authorized dealer to prevent any engine damage.

### Fuel quality

If you are experiencing starting, rough idle or hesitation driveability problems, try a different brand of unleaded gasoline. “Premium” unleaded gasoline is not recommended for vehicles designed to use “Regular” unleaded gasoline because it may cause these problems to become more pronounced. If the problems persist, see your authorized dealer.

It should not be necessary to add any aftermarket products to your fuel tank if you continue to use high quality fuel of the recommended octane rating. Aftermarket products could cause damage to the fuel system. Repairs to correct the effects of using an aftermarket product in your fuel may not be covered by your warranty.

Many of the world’s automakers approved the World-wide Fuel Charter that recommends gasoline specifications to provide improved performance and emission control system protection for your vehicle. Gasolines that meet the World-wide Fuel Charter should be used when available. Ask your fuel supplier about gasolines that meet the World-wide Fuel Charter.

### Cleaner air

Ford endorses the use of reformulated “cleaner-burning” gasolines to improve air quality.


### Running out of fuel

Avoid running out of fuel because this situation may have an adverse effect on powertrain components.

If you have run out of fuel:

- You may need to cycle the ignition from off to on several times after refueling, to allow the fuel system to pump the fuel from the tank to the engine.

## Maintenance and Specifications

- The  indicator may come on. For more information on the “check engine” or the “service engine soon” indicator, refer to *Warning lights and chimes* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter.

### ESSENTIALS OF GOOD FUEL ECONOMY

#### Measuring techniques

Your best source of information about actual fuel economy is you, the driver. You must gather information as accurately and consistently as possible. Fuel expense, frequency of fill-ups or fuel gauge readings are NOT accurate as a measure of fuel economy. We do not recommend taking fuel economy measurements during the first 1,000 miles (1,600 km) of driving (engine break-in period). You will get a more accurate measurement after 2,000 miles-3,000 miles (3,000 km–5,000 km).

#### Filling the tank

The advertised fuel capacity of the fuel tank on your vehicle is equal to the rated refill capacity of the fuel tank as listed in the *Refill capacities* section of this chapter.

The advertised capacity is the amount of the indicated capacity and the empty reserve combined. Indicated capacity is the difference in the amount of fuel in a full tank and a tank when the fuel gauge indicates empty. Empty reserve is the small amount of fuel remaining in the fuel tank after the fuel gauge indicates empty.

**The amount of usable fuel in the empty reserve varies and should not be relied upon to increase driving range. When refueling your vehicle after the fuel gauge indicates empty, you might not be able to refuel the full amount of the advertised capacity of the fuel tank due to the empty reserve still present in the tank.**

For consistent results when filling the fuel tank:

- Turn the engine/ignition switch to the off position prior to refueling, an error in the reading will result if the engine is left running.
- Use the same filling rate setting (low — medium — high) each time the tank is filled.
- Allow no more than two automatic click-offs when filling.
- Always use fuel with the recommended octane rating.
- Use a known quality gasoline, preferably a national brand.
- Use the same side of the same pump and have the vehicle facing the same direction each time you fill up.



## Maintenance and Specifications

- Have the vehicle loading and distribution the same every time.
- Your results will be most accurate if your filling method is consistent.

### Calculating fuel economy

1. Fill the fuel tank completely and record the initial odometer reading (in miles or kilometers).
2. Each time you fill the tank, record the amount of fuel added (in gallons or liters).
3. After at least three to five tank fill-ups, fill the fuel tank and record the current odometer reading.
4. Subtract your initial odometer reading from the current odometer reading.
5. Follow one of the simple calculations in order to determine fuel economy:

Calculation 1: **Divide total miles traveled by total gallons used.**

Calculation 2: **Multiply liters used by 100, then divide by total kilometers traveled.**

Keep a record for at least one month and record the type of driving (city or highway). This will provide an accurate estimate of the vehicle's fuel economy under current driving conditions. Additionally, keeping records during summer and winter will show how temperature impacts fuel economy. In general, lower temperatures give lower fuel economy.

### Driving style — good driving and fuel economy habits

Give consideration to the lists that follow and you may be able to change a number of variables and improve your fuel economy.

#### **Habits**

- Smooth, moderate operation can yield up to 10% savings in fuel.
- Steady speeds without stopping will usually give the best fuel economy.
- Idling for long periods of time (greater than one minute) may waste fuel.
- Anticipate stopping; slowing down may eliminate the need to stop.
- Sudden or hard accelerations may reduce fuel economy.
- Slow down gradually.
- Driving at reasonable speeds (traveling at 55 mph [88 km/h] uses 15% less fuel than traveling at 65 mph [105 km/h]).

## Maintenance and Specifications

- Revving the engine before turning it off may reduce fuel economy.
- Using the air conditioner or defroster may reduce fuel economy.
- You may want to turn off the speed control in hilly terrain if unnecessary shifting between third and fourth gear occurs. Unnecessary shifting of this type could result in reduced fuel economy.
- Warming up a vehicle on cold mornings is not required and may reduce fuel economy.
- Resting your foot on the brake pedal while driving may reduce fuel economy.
- Combine errands and minimize stop-and-go driving.

### **Maintenance**

- Keep tires properly inflated and use only recommended size.
- Operating a vehicle with the wheels out of alignment will reduce fuel economy.
- Use recommended engine oil. Refer to *Lubricant specifications* in this chapter.
- Perform all regularly scheduled maintenance items. Follow the recommended maintenance schedule and owner maintenance checks found in *scheduled maintenance information*.

### **Conditions**

- Heavily loading a vehicle or towing a trailer may reduce fuel economy at any speed.
- Carrying unnecessary weight may reduce fuel economy (approximately 1 mpg [0.4 km/L] is lost for every 400 lb [180 kg] of weight carried).
- Adding certain accessories to your vehicle (for example bug deflectors, rollbars/light bars, running boards, ski/luggage racks) may reduce fuel economy.
- Using fuel blended with alcohol may lower fuel economy.
- Fuel economy may decrease with lower temperatures during the first 8–10 miles (12–16 km) of driving.
- Driving on flat terrain offers improved fuel economy as compared to driving on hilly terrain.
- Transmissions give their best fuel economy when operated in the top cruise gear and with steady pressure on the gas pedal.
- Close windows for high speed driving.

266

2006 Escape (204)  
Owners Guide (post-2002-fmt)  
USA (fus)

## Maintenance and Specifications

### EPA window sticker

Every new vehicle should have the EPA window sticker. Contact your authorized dealer if the window sticker is not supplied with your vehicle. The EPA window sticker should be your guide for the fuel economy comparisons with other vehicles.

It is important to note the box in the lower left corner of the window sticker. These numbers represent the Range of MPG (L/100 km) expected on the vehicle under optimum conditions. Your fuel economy may vary depending upon the method of operation and conditions.


### EMISSION CONTROL SYSTEM


Your vehicle is equipped with various emission control components and a catalytic converter which will enable your vehicle to comply with applicable exhaust emission standards. To make sure that the catalytic converter and other emission control components continue to work properly:

- Use only the specified fuel listed.
- Avoid running out of fuel.
- Do not turn off the ignition while your vehicle is moving, especially at high speeds.
- Have the items listed in *scheduled maintenance information* performed according to the specified schedule.

The scheduled maintenance items listed in *scheduled maintenance information* are essential to the life and performance of your vehicle and to its emissions system.

If other than Ford, Motorcraft or Ford-authorized parts are used for maintenance replacements or for service of components affecting emission control, such non-Ford parts should be equivalent to genuine Ford Motor Company parts in performance and durability.

 Do not park, idle, or drive your vehicle in dry grass or other dry ground cover. The emission system heats up the engine compartment and exhaust system, which can start a fire.

Illumination of the  indicator, charging system warning light or the temperature warning light, fluid leaks, strange odors, smoke or loss of engine power could indicate that the emission control system is not working properly.

## Maintenance and Specifications





Exhaust leaks may result in entry of harmful and potentially lethal fumes into the passenger compartment.


Do not make any unauthorized changes to your vehicle or engine. By law, vehicle owners and anyone who manufactures, repairs, services, sells, leases, trades vehicles, or supervises a fleet of vehicles are not permitted to intentionally remove an emission control device or prevent it from working. Information about your vehicle's emission system is on the Vehicle Emission Control Information Decal located on or near the engine. This decal identifies engine displacement and gives some tune up specifications.


Please consult your *Warranty Guide* for complete emission warranty information.

### On board diagnostics (OBD-II)

Your vehicle is equipped with a computer that monitors the engine's emission control system. This system is commonly known as the On Board Diagnostics System (OBD-II). This OBD-II system protects the environment by ensuring that your vehicle continues to meet government emission standards. The OBD-II system also assists your authorized dealer in properly servicing your vehicle. When the  indicator illuminates, the OBD-II system has detected a malfunction. Temporary malfunctions may cause the  indicator to illuminate. Examples are:



1. The vehicle has run out of fuel—the engine may misfire or run poorly.
2. Poor fuel quality or water in the fuel.
3. The fuel cap may not have been securely tightened. See *Fuel filler cap* in this chapter.

These temporary malfunctions can be corrected by filling the fuel tank with good quality fuel and/or properly tightening the fuel cap. After three driving cycles without these or any other temporary malfunctions present, the  indicator should turn off—A driving cycle consists of a cold engine startup followed by mixed city/highway driving. No additional vehicle service is required.

If the  indicator remains on, have your vehicle serviced at the first available opportunity.

## Maintenance and Specifications

### Readiness for Inspection/Maintenance (I/M) testing

In some localities, it may be a legal requirement to pass an I/M test of the on-board diagnostics system. If the  indicator is on, refer to the description in the *Warning lights and chimes* section of the *Instrument Cluster* chapter. Your vehicle may not pass the I/M test with the  indicator on.

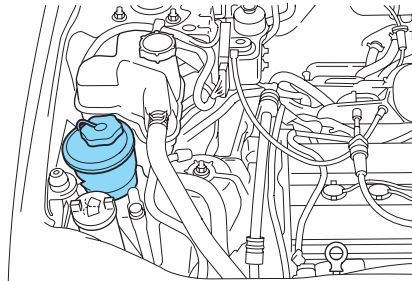
If the vehicle's powertrain system or its battery has just been serviced, the on-board diagnostics system is reset to a "not ready for I/M test" condition. To ready the on-board diagnostics system for I/M testing, a minimum of 30 minutes of city and highway driving is necessary as described below:

- First, at least 10 minutes of driving on an expressway or highway.
- Next, at least 20 minutes driving in stop-and-go, city-type traffic with at least four idle periods.

Allow the vehicle to sit for at least eight hours without starting the engine. Then, start the engine and complete the above driving cycle. The engine must warm up to its normal operating temperature. Once started, do not turn off the engine until the above driving cycle is complete.

### POWER STEERING FLUID

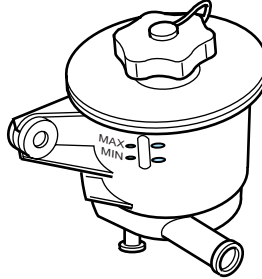
Check the power steering fluid. Refer to *scheduled maintenance* for the service interval schedules. **If adding fluid is necessary, use only MERCON® ATF.**



1. Start the engine and let it run until it reaches normal operating temperature (the engine coolant temperature gauge indicator will be near the center of the normal area between H and C).
2. While the engine idles, turn the steering wheel left and right several times.
3. Turn the engine off.

## Maintenance and Specifications

4. Check the fluid level in the reservoir. It should be between the MIN and MAX lines. Do not add fluid if the level is in this range.

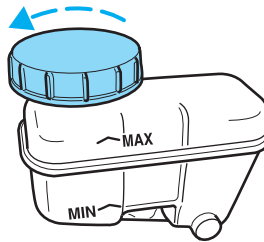


5. If the fluid is low, add fluid in small amounts, continuously checking the level until it reaches the range between the MIN and MAX lines. Be sure to put the cap back on the reservoir.

### BRAKE/CLUTCH FLUID

Brake and clutch systems are supplied from the same reservoir.

The fluid level will drop slowly as the brakes wear, and will rise when the brake components are replaced. Fluid levels between the "MIN" and "MAX" lines are within the normal operating range; there is no need to add fluid. If the fluid levels are outside of the normal operating range the performance of your brake system could be compromised; seek service from your authorized dealer immediately.



### TRANSMISSION FLUID

#### Checking automatic transmission fluid (if equipped)

Refer to your *scheduled maintenance information* for scheduled intervals for fluid checks and changes. Your transaxle does not consume fluid. However, the fluid level should be checked if the transaxle is not working properly, i.e., if the transaxle slips or shifts slowly or if you notice some sign of fluid leakage.

**Automatic transmission fluid expands when warmed. To obtain an accurate fluid check, drive the vehicle until it is warmed up (approximately 20 miles [30 km]). If your vehicle has been operated for an extended period at high speeds, in city traffic**

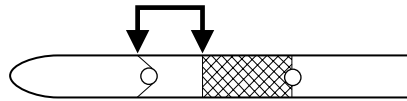
## Maintenance and Specifications

**during hot weather or pulling a trailer, the vehicle should be turned off for about 30 minutes to allow fluid to cool before checking.**

1. Drive the vehicle 20 miles (30 km) or until it reaches normal operating temperature.
2. Park the vehicle on a level surface and engage the parking brake.
3. With the parking brake engaged and your foot on the brake pedal, start the engine and move the gearshift lever through all of the gear ranges. Allow sufficient time for each gear to engage.
4. Latch the gearshift lever in P (Park) and leave the engine running.
5. Remove the dipstick, wiping it clean with a clean, dry lint free rag. If necessary, refer to *Identifying components in the engine compartment* in this chapter for the location of the dipstick.
6. Install the dipstick making sure it is fully seated in the filler tube.
7. Remove the dipstick and inspect the fluid level. The fluid should be in the crosshatch zone for normal operating temperature.

### **Low fluid level**

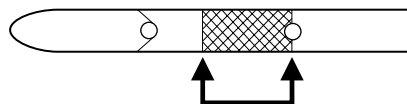
Do not drive the vehicle if the fluid level is at the bottom of the dipstick and the outside temperatures are above 50°F (10°C).



### **Correct fluid level**

The transmission fluid should be checked at normal operating temperatures 150°F-170°F (66°C-77°C) on a level surface. The normal operating temperature can be reached after approximately 20 miles (30 km) of driving.

The transmission fluid should be in the crosshatch zone if at normal operating temperature (150°F-170°F [66°C-77°C]).

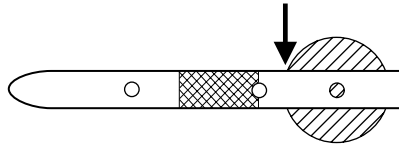


## Maintenance and Specifications

### **High fluid level**

Fluid levels above the crosshatch zone may result in transaxle failure. An overfill condition of transmission fluid may cause shift and/or engagement concerns and/or possible damage.

High fluid levels can be caused by an overheating condition.



### **Adjusting automatic transmission fluid levels**

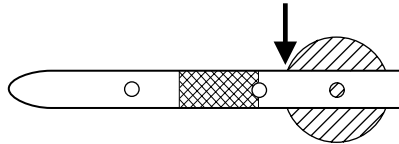
Before adding any fluid, make sure the correct type is used. The type of fluid used is normally indicated on the dipstick blade and also in the *Lubricant specifications* section in this chapter.

**Use of a non-approved automatic transmission fluid may cause internal transaxle component damage.**

If necessary, add fluid in 1/2 pint (250 ml) increments through the filler tube until the level is correct.

If an overfill occurs, excess fluid should be removed by an authorized dealer.

**An overfill condition of transmission fluid may cause shift and/or engagement concerns and/or possible damage.**



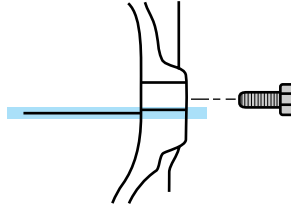
Do not use supplemental transmission fluid additives, treatments or cleaning agents. The use of these materials may affect transmission operation and result in damage to internal transmission components.



## Maintenance and Specifications

### Checking and adding manual transmission fluid (if equipped)

1. Park the vehicle on a level surface.
2. Engage the parking brake fully – put in first gear.
3. Assure the vehicle cannot move.
4. Clean the filler plug.
5. Remove the filler plug and inspect the fluid level.
6. Fluid level should be at bottom of the opening.
7. Add enough fluid through the filler opening so that the fluid level is at the bottom of the opening.
8. Install and tighten the fill plug securely.



Use only fluid that meets Ford specifications. Refer to the *Lubricant specifications* in this chapter.

### AIR FILTER

Refer to *scheduled maintenance information* for the appropriate intervals for changing the air filter element.

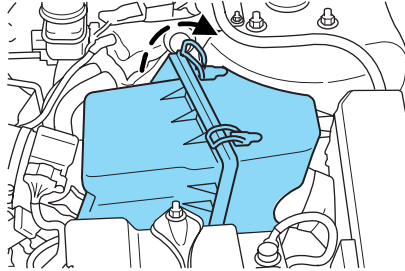
When changing the air filter element, use only the Motorcraft air filter element listed. Refer to *Motorcraft part numbers* in this chapter.

**Note:** Do not start your engine with the air cleaner removed and do not remove it while the engine is running.

1. Loosen the clamp that secures the air inlet tube to the engine air filter cover and disconnect the tube from the cover (for V6 only).
2. Release the clamps that secure the air filter housing cover.

## Maintenance and Specifications

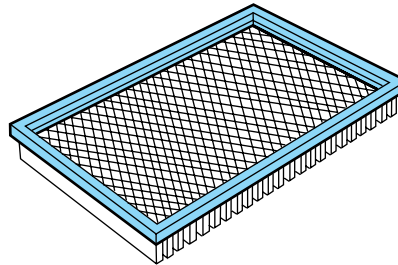
3. Carefully separate the two halves of the air filter housing.



4. Remove the air filter element from the air filter housing.

5. Wipe the air filter housing and cover clean to remove any dirt or debris and to ensure good sealing.

6. Install a new air filter element. Be careful not to crimp the filter element edges between the air filter housing and cover. This could cause filter damage and allow unfiltered air to enter the engine if not properly seated.



7. Replace the air filter housing cover and secure the clamps.

8. Replace the air inlet tube and secure the clamp.

**Note:** Failure to use the correct air filter element may result in severe engine damage. The customer warranty may be voided for any damage to the engine if the correct air filter element is not used.

## Maintenance and Specifications

### MOTORCRAFT PART NUMBERS

Component	2.3L I4 engine	3.0L DOHC V6 Duratec engine
Air filter element <sup>1</sup>	FA-1683	FA-1683
Fuel filter	FG-800-A	FG-800-A
Battery	BXT-40R	BXT-40R
Oil filter	FL-910	FL-820-S
PCV valve	<sup>2</sup>	
Spark Plugs	<sup>3</sup>	

<sup>1</sup>Failure to use the correct air filter element may result in severe engine damage. The customer warranty may be voided for any damage to the engine if the correct air filter element is not used.

<sup>2</sup>The PCV valve is a critical emission component. It is one of the items listed in *scheduled maintenance information* and is essential to the life and performance of your vehicle and to its emissions system.

For PCV valve replacement, see your authorized dealer. Refer to *scheduled maintenance information* for the appropriate intervals for changing the PCV valve.

**Replace the PCV valve with one that meets Ford material and design specifications for your vehicle, such as a Motorcraft or equivalent replacement part. The customer warranty may be void for any damage to the emissions system if such a PCV valve is not used.**

<sup>3</sup>For spark plug replacement, see your authorized dealer. Refer to *scheduled maintenance information* for the appropriate intervals for changing the spark plugs.

**Replace the spark plugs with ones that meet Ford material and design specifications for your vehicle, such as Motorcraft or equivalent replacement parts. The customer warranty may be void for any damage to the engine if such spark plugs are not used.**

## Maintenance and Specifications

### REFILL CAPACITIES

Fluid	Ford Part Name	Application	Capacity
Brake fluid (and clutch fluid if equipped)	Motorcraft High Performance DOT 3 Motor Vehicle Brake Fluid	All	Fill to line on reservoir
Engine oil (including filter change) <sup>6</sup>	Motorcraft SAE 5W-20 Premium Synthetic Blend Motor Oil (US) Motorcraft SAE 5W-20 Super Premium Motor Oil (Canada)	2.3L I4 engine	4.5 quarts (4.25L)
		3.0L V6 Duratec engine	6.0 quarts (5.7L)
Fuel tank	N/A	All	16.5 gallons (62.5L)
Power steering fluid	Motorcraft MERCON® ATF	All	Fill to line on reservoir
Transmission fluid	Motorcraft SAE 75W-90 API GL-4 Gear Oil	Manual transaxle (2WD)	2.4 quarts (2.3L) <sup>2</sup>
		Manual transaxle (4X4)	2.5 quarts (2.4L) <sup>2</sup>
	Motorcraft MERCON® ATF <sup>1</sup>	2.3L I4 engine with automatic transaxle	10.2 quarts (9.6L) <sup>3</sup>
		3.0L V6 Duratec engine with automatic transaxle	
Power Transfer Unit	Motorcraft SAE 75W-140 High Performance Synthetic Rear Axle Lubricant	4X4 (Automatic)	12 ounces (0.35L)
	Motorcraft SAE 80W-90 Premium Rear Axle Lubricant	4X4 (Manual)	

## Maintenance and Specifications

Fluid	Ford Part Name	Application	Capacity
Engine coolant <sup>4</sup>	Motorcraft Premium Gold Engine Coolant (yellow-colored)	2.3L I4 engine with manual transaxle	5.3 quarts (5.0L)
		2.3L I4 engine with automatic transaxle	6.3 quarts (6.0L)
		3.0L V6 Duratec engine with automatic transaxle	10.6 quarts (10.0L)
Rear axle lubricant	Motorcraft SAE 80W-90 Premium Rear Axle Lubricant	4X4	2.96 pints (1.4L) <sup>5</sup>
Windshield washer fluid	Motorcraft Premium Windshield Washer Concentrate	All	2.7 quarts (2.6L)

<sup>1</sup>**Ensure the correct automatic transmission fluid is used. Transmission fluid requirements are indicated on the dipstick blade. MERCON® and MERCON® V are not interchangeable. DO NOT mix MERCON® and MERCON® V. Refer to your scheduled maintenance information to determine the correct service interval.**

<sup>2</sup>Service refill capacity is determined by filling the transmission to the bottom of the filler hole with the vehicle on a level surface.

<sup>3</sup>Indicates only approximate dry-fill capacity. Some applications may vary based on cooler size and if equipped with an in-tank cooler. The amount of transmission fluid and fluid level should be set by the indication on the dipstick's normal operating range.

<sup>4</sup>Add the coolant type originally equipped in your vehicle.

<sup>5</sup>Fill to 1/4 inch to 9/16 inch (6 mm to 14 mm) below bottom of fill hole.

<sup>6</sup>Use of synthetic or synthetic blend motor oil is not mandatory. Engine oil need only meet the requirements of Ford specification WSS-M2C930-A and the API Certification mark.

## Maintenance and Specifications

### LUBRICANT SPECIFICATIONS

Item	Ford Part Name or equivalent	Ford Part Number	Ford Specification
Body hinges, latches, door striker plates and rollers, seat tracks, fuel filler door hinge and spring, primary and auxiliary hood latches	Multi-Purpose Grease	XG-4 or XL-5	ESB-M1C93-B
Brake fluid (and clutch fluid if equipped)	Motorcraft High Performance DOT 3 Motor Vehicle Brake Fluid	PM-1	ESA-M6C25-A
Halfshaft CV joints	Motorcraft Constant Velocity Joint Grease	XG-5	WSS-M1C258-A1
Engine coolant <sup>1</sup>	Motorcraft Premium Gold Engine Coolant (yellow-colored)	VC-7-A (U.S., except CA, OR and NM), VC-7-B (CA, OR and NM)	WSS-M97B51-A1
Engine oil	Motorcraft SAE 5W-20 Premium Synthetic Blend Motor Oil (US) Motorcraft SAE 5W-20 Super Premium Motor Oil (Canada)	XO-5W20-QSP (US) CXO-5W20-LSP12 (Canada)	WSS-M2C930-A with API Certification Mark
Manual transaxle	Motorcraft SAE 75W-90 Gear Oil	F32Z-19C547-MA	WSS-M2C203-A1

## Maintenance and Specifications

Item	Ford Part Name or equivalent	Ford Part Number	Ford Specification
Automatic transaxle <sup>2</sup>	Motorcraft MERCON® ATF	XT-2-QDX	MERCON®
Power steering fluid	Motorcraft MERCON® ATF		
Rear axle (4X4) <sup>4</sup>	Motorcraft SAE 80W-90 Premium Rear Axle Lubricant	XY-80W90-QL	WSP-M2C197-A
Power Transfer Unit (4X4-Manual Transaxle)			
Power Transfer Unit (4X4-Automatic Transaxle) <sup>3</sup>	Motorcraft SAE 75W-140 High Performance Synthetic Rear Axle Lubricant	XY-75W140-QL	WSL-M2C192-A
Windshield washer fluid	Motorcraft Premium Windshield Washer Concentrate	ZC-32-A	WSB-M8B16-A2

<sup>1</sup>DO NOT USE Motorcraft Specialty Orange Engine Coolant VC-2. Refer to *Adding engine coolant*, in *this* chapter.

<sup>2</sup>Ensure the correct automatic transmission fluid is used. Transmission fluid requirements are indicated on the dipstick or on the dipstick handle. MERCON® and MERCON® V are not interchangeable. DO NOT mix MERCON® and MERCON® V. Refer to your *scheduled maintenance information* to determine the correct service interval.

<sup>3</sup>The Power Transfer Unit is lubricated for life with synthetic lube. Lubricant levels are not to be checked or changed unless a leak is suspected or repair required. Replace Power Transfer Unit lubricant with specified synthetic lubricant anytime the unit is submerged in water.

<sup>4</sup>4X4 vehicles exposed for prolonged periods to temperatures less than -40° F (-40° C) should change out the rear axle fluid to Motorcraft SAE 75W-140 Synthetic Rear Axle Lubricant, Ford part number XY-75W140-QL meeting Ford specification WSL-M2C192-A.

## Maintenance and Specifications

### ENGINE DATA

Engine	2.3L I4 engine	3.0L DOHC V6 Duratec engine
Cubic inches	140	183
Required fuel	87 octane	87 octane
Firing order	1-3-4-2	1-4-2-5-3-6
Ignition system	Coil on plug	Coil on plug
Spark plug gap	0.049–0.053 inch (1.25–1.35mm)	0.052–0.056 inch (1.32–1.42mm)
Compression ratio	9.7:1	10.0:1

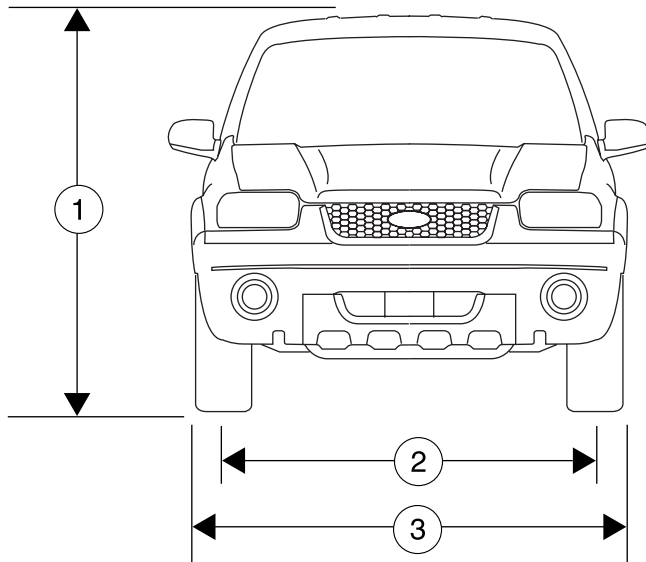
### VEHICLE DIMENSIONS

Dimensions	4-Door - inches (mm)
(1) Vehicle height without roof rack*	67.6 (1718)
(1) Vehicle height with roof rack*	69.7 (1770)
(2) Front tread / Rear tread*	61.1 (1552) / 60.4 (1533)
(3) Overall width (body)	70.1 (1780)
(4) Wheelbase	103.2 (2620)
(5) Overall length	174.3 (4442)

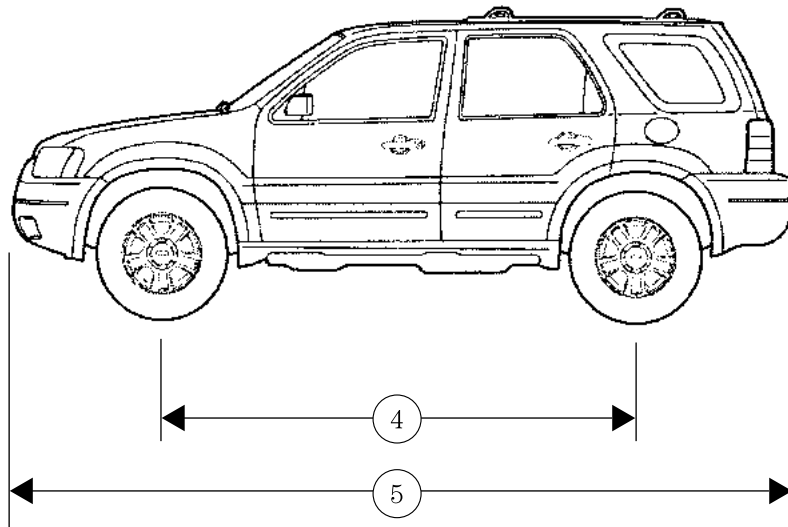
\* Base vehicle at curb loading



## Maintenance and Specifications



## Maintenance and Specifications



### IDENTIFYING YOUR VEHICLE

#### Safety Compliance Certification Label

The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration Regulations require that a Safety Compliance Certification Label be affixed to a vehicle and prescribe where the Safety Compliance Certification Label may be located. The Safety Compliance Certification Label is located on the structure by the trailing edge of the driver's door or the edge of the driver's door.

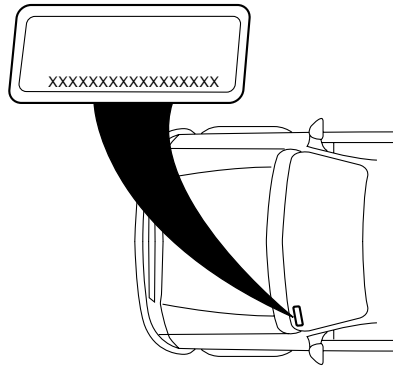
MFD. BY FORD MOTOR CO. IN U.S.A.							
DATE: XX/XX		GVWR: XXXXXLB/ XXXXXKG					
FRONT GAWR: XXXXL		WITH		REAR GAWR: XXXXLB		WITH	
XXXXKG		TIRES		XXXXKG		TIRES	
XXXX/XXXXXXXX		RIMS		XXXX/XXXXXXXX		RIMS	
XXXX.XX		PSI COLD		XXXX.XX		PSI COLD	
AT XXX kPa/XX		PSI COLD		AT XXX kPa/XX		PSI COLD	
THIS VEHICLE CONFORMS TO ALL APPLICABLE FEDERAL MOTOR VEHICLE SAFETY AND THEFT PREVENTION STANDARDS IN EFFECT ON THE DATE OF MANUFACTURE SHOWN ABOVE.							
VIN: XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX						XXXXX	
TYPE: XXX						XXXXX	
EXT PNT: XX		RC: XX		DSO: XXXXX			
WB	TR	INT	TP/PS	AXLE	TR	SPR	XXXXX
XXX	X	XX		X	XX	X XX	XXX
XXXXXXXXXXXXX UTC V2USA-1520472-AA							

## Maintenance and Specifications

### Vehicle identification number (VIN)

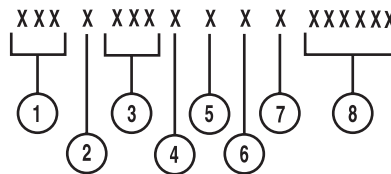
The vehicle identification number is attached to a metal tag and is located on the driver side instrument panel.

Please note that in the graphic, XXXX is representative of your vehicle identification number.



The Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) contains the following information:

1. World manufacturer identifier
2. Brake type and Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR)
3. Vehicle line, series, body type
4. Engine type
5. Check digit
6. Model year
7. Assembly plant
8. Production sequence number



## Maintenance and Specifications

### TRANSMISSION/TRANSAXLE CODE DESIGNATIONS

You can find a transmission/transaxle code on the Safety Compliance Certification Label. The following table tells you which transmission or transaxle each code represents.

MFD. BY FORD MOTOR CO. IN U.S.A.							
DATE: XX/XX		GVWR: XXXXXLB/ XXXXXKG					
FRONT GAWR: XXXXL		WITH		REAR GAWR: XXXXLB		WITH	
XXXXKG		TIRES		XXXXKG		TIRES	
XXXX/XXXXXXX		RIMS		XXXX/XXXXXXX		RIMS	
XXXX.XX		AT XXX kPa/XX PSI COLD		XXXX.XX		AT XXX kPa/XX PSI COLD	
THIS VEHICLE CONFORMS TO ALL APPLICABLE FEDERAL MOTOR VEHICLE SAFETY AND THEFT PREVENTION STANDARDS IN EFFECT ON THE DATE OF MANUFACTURE SHOWN ABOVE.							
VIN: XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX		XXXXXX					
TYPE: XXX		XXXXXX					
EXT PNT: XX		RC: XX		DSO: XXXXX			
WB	BRK	INT TR	TP/PS	R	AXLE	TR	SPR
XXX	X	XX	X	XX	X	XX	XXX
XXXXXXXXXXXXX UTC							

Description	Code
Five-speed manual	3
Four-speed automatic	4

## Accessories

### GENUINE FORD ACCESSORIES FOR YOUR VEHICLE

A wide selection of Genuine Ford Accessories are available for your vehicle through your local authorized Ford or Ford of Canada dealer. These quality accessories have been specifically engineered to fulfill your automotive needs; they are custom designed to complement the style and aerodynamic appearance of your vehicle. In addition, each accessory is made from high quality materials and meets or exceeds Ford's rigorous engineering and safety specifications. Ford Motor Company will repair or replace any properly authorized dealer-installed Genuine Ford Accessory found to be defective in factory-supplied materials or workmanship during the warranty period, as well as any component damaged by the defective accessory. The accessory will be warranted for whichever provides you the greatest benefit:

- 12 months or 12,000 miles (20,000 km) (whichever occurs first), or
- the remainder of your new vehicle limited warranty.

This means that Genuine Ford Accessories purchased along with your new vehicle and installed by an authorized dealer are covered for the full length of your New Vehicle's Limited Warranty — 3 years or 36,000 miles (60,000 km) (whichever occurs first). Contact your authorized dealer for details and a copy of the warranty.

### Not all accessories are available for all models.

The following is a list of several Genuine Ford Accessory products. Not all accessories are available for all models. For a complete listing of the accessories that are available for your vehicle, please contact your authorized dealer or visit our online store at:  
[www.fordaccessoriesstore.com](http://www.fordaccessoriesstore.com).

#### Exterior style

Bug shields  
Deflectors  
Running boards  
Splash guards  
Step Bars

#### Interior style

Electrochromatic compass/temperature interior mirrors  
Floor mats  
Scuff plates

## Accessories

### Lifestyle

Cargo organization and management

Mobile-Ease<sup>™</sup> hands-free communication system

Rear seat entertainment systems

Trailer hitches, wiring harnesses and accessories

### Peace of mind

Locking gas cap

Remote start

Vehicle security systems

For maximum vehicle performance, keep the following information in mind when adding accessories or equipment to your vehicle:

- When adding accessories, equipment, passengers and luggage to your vehicle, do not exceed the total weight capacity of the vehicle or of the front or rear axle (GVWR or GAWR as indicated on the Safety Compliance Certification label). Consult your authorized dealer for specific weight information.
- The Federal Communications Commission (FCC) and Canadian Radio Telecommunications Commission (CRTC) regulate the use of mobile communications systems — such as two-way radios, telephones and theft alarms - that are equipped with radio transmitters. Any such equipment installed in your vehicle should comply with FCC or CRTC regulations and should be installed only by a qualified service technician.
- Mobile communications systems may harm the operation of your vehicle, particularly if they are not properly designed for automotive use.
- To avoid interference with other vehicle functions, such as anti-lock braking systems, amateur radio users who install radios and antennas onto their vehicle should not locate the Amateur Radio Antennas in the area of the driver's side hood.
- Electrical or electronic accessories or components that are added to the vehicle by the authorized dealer or the owner may adversely affect battery performance and durability.

## Index

### A

- Accessory delay .....56
- Air cleaner filter .....273, 275
- Airbag supplemental restraint system .....112, 121, 124
  - and child safety seats .....114
  - description .....112, 121, 124
  - disposal .....127
  - driver airbag .....114, 122, 125
  - indicator light .....121, 123, 126
  - operation .....114, 122, 125
  - passenger airbag .....114, 122, 125
  - side airbag .....121
- All Wheel Drive (AWD), driving off road .....192
- Ambulance packages .....7
- Antifreeze  
(see Engine coolant) .....253
- Anti-lock brake system  
(see Brakes) .....179
- Anti-theft system .....84, 87
  - arming the system .....87
  - disarming a triggered system ..88
  - triggering .....88
- Audio system  
(see Radio) .....17, 26, 31
- Automatic transaxle
  - fluid, adding .....270
  - fluid, checking .....270
- Automatic transmission .....182
  - driving an automatic overdrive .....184
  - fluid, refill capacities .....276
  - fluid, specification .....280
- Auxiliary power point .....55
- Axle
  - lubricant specifications ..278, 280
  - refill capacities .....276

### B

- Battery .....251
  - acid, treating emergencies .....251
  - battery saver .....47
  - jumping a disabled battery ....220
  - maintenance-free .....251
  - replacement, specifications ..275
  - servicing .....251
- BeltMinder .....107
- Brakes .....178–179
  - anti-lock .....179
  - anti-lock brake system (ABS) warning light .....179
  - fluid, checking and adding ....270
  - fluid, refill capacities .....276
  - fluid, specifications .....278, 280
  - lubricant specifications ..278, 280
  - parking .....180
  - shift interlock .....182
- Bulbs .....47

### C

- Capacities for refilling fluids ....276
- Cargo area shade .....71
- Cargo cover .....72
- Cell phone use .....7
- Child safety restraints .....127
  - child safety belts .....127
- Child safety seats .....131
  - attaching with tether straps ..135
  - in front seat .....132
  - in rear seat .....132
- Cleaning your vehicle
  - engine compartment .....236
  - instrument panel .....238

287

## Index

- interior .....239
  - interior trim .....239
  - plastic parts .....237
  - washing .....235
  - waxing .....235
  - wheels .....236
  - wiper blades .....238
  - Climate control (see Air conditioning or Heating) .....38–39
  - Clock .....32
  - Clock adjust
    - 6-CD in dash .....20, 24
    - AM/FM/CD .....28
    - AM/FM/Tape/CD .....32
    - Single CD .....28
  - Clutch
    - fluid .....270
    - operation while driving .....187
    - recommended shift speeds ....188
  - Console .....54
  - overhead .....54
  - Controls
    - power seat .....90
  - Coolant
    - checking and adding .....253
    - refill capacities .....256, 276
    - specifications .....278, 280
  - Cruise control
    - (see Speed control) .....58
  - Customer Assistance .....200
  - Ford Extended Service Plan .....232
  - Getting assistance outside the U.S. and Canada .....233
  - Getting roadside assistance ...200
  - Getting the service you need .....228
  - Ordering additional owner's literature .....233
  - Utilizing the Mediation/Arbitration Program .....231
- D**
- Daytime running lamps (see Lamps) .....43
  - Defrost
    - rear window .....40
  - Dipstick
    - automatic transmission fluid .....270
    - engine oil .....247
  - Doors
    - lubricant specifications .....278
  - Driving under special conditions .....186, 194, 197
    - sand .....195
    - snow and ice .....198
    - through water .....196, 199
- E**
- Electronic message center .....62
  - Emergencies, roadside
    - jump-starting .....220
  - Emission control system .....267
  - Engine .....280
    - cleaning .....236
    - coolant .....253
    - fail-safe cooling .....257
    - idle speed control .....251
    - lubrication specifications .....278, 280
    - refill capacities .....276
    - service points .....244–245
    - starting after a collision .....202
  - Engine block heater .....178

288

**2006 Escape (204)**  
**Owners Guide (post-2002-fmt)**  
**USA (fus)**



## Index

- Engine oil .....247  
 checking and adding .....247  
 dipstick .....247  
 filter, specifications .....250, 275  
 recommendations .....250  
 refill capacities .....276  
 specifications .....278, 280  
 Exhaust fumes .....178
- F**
- Fail safe cooling .....257  
 Fluid capacities .....276  
 Foglamps .....44  
 Four-Wheel Drive vehicles  
   driving off road .....193  
   indicator light .....192  
   preparing to drive your  
   vehicle .....181  
 Fuel .....259  
   calculating fuel  
   economy .....63, 264  
   cap .....261  
   capacity .....276  
   choosing the right fuel .....262  
   comparisons with EPA fuel  
   economy estimates .....267  
   detergent in fuel .....263  
   filling your vehicle  
   with fuel .....259, 261, 264  
   filter, specifications .....259, 275  
   fuel pump shut-off switch .....202  
   improving fuel economy .....264  
   octane rating .....263, 280  
   quality .....263  
   running out of fuel .....263  
   safety information relating  
   to automotive fuels .....259  
 Fuses .....202, 204
- G**
- Gas cap (see Fuel cap) .....261  
 Gas mileage  
 (see Fuel economy) .....264  
 Gauges .....15
- H**
- Hazard flashers .....201  
 Head restraints .....89, 92  
 Headlamps .....41  
   aiming .....44  
   autolamp system .....41  
   bulb specifications .....48  
   daytime running lights .....43  
   flash to pass .....43  
   high beam .....42  
   replacing bulbs .....48  
   turning on and off .....41  
 Heating  
   heater only system .....38  
 Hood .....243
- I**
- Ignition .....175, 280  
 Infant seats  
 (see Safety seats) .....131  
 Inspection/maintenance (I/M)  
 testing .....269  
 Instrument panel  
   cleaning .....238  
   cluster .....10  
   lighting up panel and  
   interior .....44
- J**
- Jump-starting your vehicle .....220

## Index

### K

Keyless entry system .....83  
 autolock .....76  
 keypad .....83  
 locking and unlocking doors ....84  
 programming entry code .....83  
 Keys .....85  
 positions of the ignition .....175

### L

Lamps  
 autolamp system .....41  
 bulb replacement  
 specifications chart .....48  
 daytime running light .....43  
 fog lamps .....44  
 headlamps .....41  
 headlamps, flash to pass .....43  
 instrument panel, dimming ....44  
 interior lamps .....46-48  
 replacing bulbs .....48  
 Lane change indicator  
 (see Turn signal) .....46  
 Liftgate .....70  
 Lights, warning and indicator ....10  
 anti-lock brakes (ABS) .....179  
 Load limits .....162  
 Loading instructions .....169  
 Locks  
 autolock .....76  
 childproof .....78  
 Lubricant specifications ...278, 280  
 Lug nuts .....220  
 Luggage rack .....72

### M

Manual transaxle .....187

fluid, checking and adding ....273  
 reverse .....188

#### Manual transmission

fluid capacities .....276  
 lubricant specifications .....280

#### Message center .....62

english/metric button .....64  
 system check button .....64  
 warning messages .....66

#### Mirrors .....54, 57

automatic dimming rearview  
 mirror .....57  
 fold away .....58  
 heated .....58  
 side view mirrors (power) .....57

#### Moon roof .....61

#### Motorcraft parts .....240, 259, 275

### O

Octane rating .....263  
 Oil (see Engine oil) .....247  
 Overdrive .....183

### P

Parking .....189  
 Parking brake .....180  
 Parts (see Motorcraft parts) ....275  
 Passenger Occupant  
 Classification Sensor .....99  
 Power distribution box  
 (see Fuses) .....206  
 Power door locks .....75  
 Power mirrors .....57  
 Power point .....55

## Index

- Power steering .....180
  - fluid, checking and adding ....269
  - fluid, refill capacity .....276
  - fluid, specifications .....278, 280
- Power Windows .....55
- Preparing to drive your vehicle .....181
- R**
- Radio .....17, 26, 31
- Rear window defroster .....40
- Relays .....202
- Remote entry system .....78
  - illuminated entry .....82–83
  - locking/unlocking doors ....79–80
  - panic alarm .....80
  - replacing the batteries .....80
- Reverse sensing system .....190
- Roadside assistance .....200
- Roof rack .....72
- S**
- Safety Belt Maintenance .....106
- Safety belts (see Safety restraints) .....97, 101–105
- Safety Canopy .....122, 124
- Safety defects, reporting .....234
- Safety restraints .....97, 101–105
  - belt minder .....107
  - extension assembly .....106
  - for adults .....102–104
  - for children .....127
  - Occupant Classification Sensor .....99
  - safety belt maintenance .....106
  - warning light and chime .....107
- Safety seats for children .....131
- Safety Compliance Certification Label .....282
- Seat belts (see Safety restraints) .....97
- Seats .....89
  - child safety seats .....131
  - heated .....92
- SecuriLock passive anti-theft system .....84
- Servicing your vehicle .....242
- Setting the clock
  - AM/FM/In-dash 6 CD .....20, 24
  - AM/FM/Tape/CD .....32
- Snowplowing .....7
- Spark plugs, specifications .....275, 280
- Special notice
  - ambulance conversions .....7
  - utility-type vehicles .....6
- Specification chart, lubricants .....278, 280
- Speed control .....58
- Starting your vehicle .....175–177
  - jump starting .....220
- Steering wheel
  - tilting .....53
- T**
- Temperature control (see Climate control) .....38
- Tilt steering wheel .....53
- Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)
  - Tires, Wheels and Loading ....156
  - Warning Displays .....15

## Index

- Tires .....141–142
  - alignment .....149
  - care .....145
  - changing .....211
  - checking the pressure .....145
  - inflating .....143
  - label .....155
  - replacing .....147
  - rotating .....149
  - safety practices .....148
  - sidewall information .....150
  - snow tires and chains .....161
  - spare tire .....209, 211
  - terminology .....142
  - tire grades .....142
  - treadwear .....141, 146
- Towing .....169
  - recreational towing .....174
  - trailer towing .....169
  - wrecker .....226
- Transaxle
  - fluid, checking and adding  
(manual) .....273
  - manual operation .....187
- Transmission
  - automatic operation .....182
  - brake-shift interlock (BSI) ....182
  - fluid, checking and adding  
(automatic) .....270
  - fluid, refill capacities .....276
  - lubricant specifications ..278, 280
- Turn signal .....46
- V**
- Vehicle dimensions .....280
- Vehicle Identification Number  
(VIN) .....283
- Vehicle loading .....162
- Ventilating your vehicle .....178
- W**
- Warning lights (see Lights) .....10
- Washer fluid .....246
- Water, Driving through .....199
- Windows
  - power .....55
  - rear wiper/washer .....53
- Windshield washer fluid and  
wipers
  - checking and adding fluid ....246
  - liftgate reservoir .....246
  - operation .....52
  - replacing wiper blades .....247
- Wrecker towing .....226







